

أكاديمية رامي إرشيد الثقافية  
0786179729 / 0798761560

بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم

مدارس الأمانى العلمية الثانوية  
064200590



اللغة الانجليزية  
للمرحلة الثانوية  
المستوى الثالث

PREPARED BY **vocabulary**



شرح كامل للمادة مع أسئلة إضافية  
على كل موضوع  
المنهاج الجديد  
2016-2015

Reading

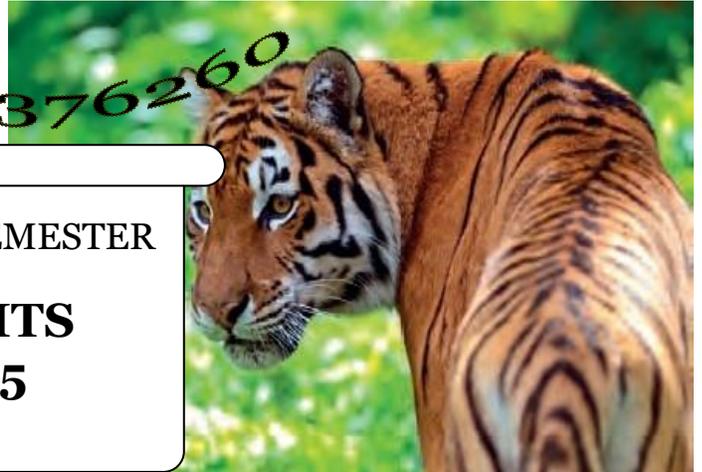
Writing



FIRST SEMESTER

UNITS

1-5



YOUR WAY TO SUCCESS

## Initial test / WB page 4-5

1. Tick the word that is different. (1 mark each)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. track / rugby/ court / pitch        | 2. journalist/ clerk / playwright / rink |
| 3. confident / tense / worried / upset | 4. oars / poet / bat/ goggles            |
| 5. muscle/ eyelids/ skates/ heartbeat  | 6. wind/ coal/ gas/ paper                |

	6
--	---

2. Add one word from box A and one word from box B to complete each sentence. (1 mark each)

A	B
get	around
look	down
meet	place
settle	started
take	up
wake	up

1. Tell me about the novel you're reading. Where does the story .....?
2. I'm sorry I'm late. I didn't..... early enough.
3. When I graduate from university, I would like to buy a house and .....
4. If you're free at the weekend, let's.....and go shopping together.
5. I've never visited that museum. I'd like to go in and.....
6. I've got a lot of homework, so I think I should..... right now!

	6
--	---

3. Report the following statements. (2 marks each)

1. I have some questions for you, Muna.  
Nour told Muna .....
2. I've lived in Amman for six years.  
Sami said.....
3. Yesterday I bought all the ingredients for a chocolate cake.  
Huda told me .....
4. I really enjoyed the book that I finished this morning.  
Tareq said .....
5. My favourite subject this year is Chemistry.  
Hussein told me.....

	10
--	----

4. Find six natural sources of power. Circle them and write them down. (1 mark each)

qklfossilfuelsamsiwindplfwaterqkld  
woodghelwavessmfysolarenergybch

	6
--	---

1. .... 2. .... 3. ....  
4. .... 5. .... 6. ....

5. Complete the sentences with words from the box. One word is not needed.  
(1 mark each)

energy, grateful, headlines , helmet, lawyer, likely, navy

1. I am studying hard because I want to be a .....
2. When you ride a bike, you should always wear a .....
3. Thank you so much! We are very.....
4. Do you think it is ..... to rain tomorrow?
5. I always look at the newspaper ....., but I don't always read the articles.
6. Solar panels generate ..... from the sun.

	6
--	---

6 . Circle the correct words. (1 mark each)

1. We're going to Aqaba again **in / on** the summer. I **have / had** been looking forward to it since last year.
2. We had the computer **repaired / repairing** because it had stopped **to work / working**.
3. Mahmoud was walking home when the rain **was starting / started**. It was very heavy, so he **must / can't** have got very wet.
4. In the past, most letters **wrote / were written** by hand, but these days they are usually **typed / typing**.

	8
--	---

7. Complete the sentences with the cooking verbs in the box. One verb is not needed.  
(1 mark each)

boil, fry, grill, melt, mix, roast, season, slice, sprinkle

1. When you heat cheese, it ..... s.
2. Put some flour and sugar in a bowl and ..... them together.
3. You need a sharp knife to ..... the bread.
4. Heat the water until it..... s.
5. Put the eggs in oil or butter to ..... them.
6. .... some salt and pepper over the potatoes to..... them.
7. .... the meat in the oven.

**Total**

	50
--	----

# UNIT ONE

## Information technology



### RIVISION OF TENSES

#### 1. THE PRESENT SIMPLE.....

##### FORM .....

Affirmative sentences: .....

1. Sub (I, We, They, You) + base verb + complementary.

-They ( watch )..... T. V daily.

2. Sub (He, She, It) + base verb +s/ es + complementary

- He ( watch)..... T.V daily

- He ( play ) ..... football every day.

-Negative sentences.....

1. Sub (I, We, They, You) + don't + base verb+ complementary.

They ( not / watch )..... T.V daily.

2. Sub (He, She, It) + doesn't + base verb+ complementary.

He (not /watch)..... T.V daily.

- Questions.....

1. Do + sub (I, We, They, You) + base verb+ complementary?

..... they ( watch )..... T.V daily?

2. Does + sub (He, She, It) + base verb + complementary?

- .....he ( watch ) ..... T.V daily?

KEY WORDS.....

rarely / seldom / sometimes / usually/ often/ always/ occasionally / hardly / every day ,week, month, year, morning , night, evening /hourly/ daily / monthly / weekly / yearly / never/ hardly ever /scarcely ever / generally/ normally / regularly/ habitually / from time to time / twice a week / once a month /now and then / frequently/ ever since

##### USES .....

- Things that happen as a routine in the present

أشياء تحدث كروتين في المضارع

\* Ahmad ( go )..... to school every day.

- Things that are always true

أشياء دائما حقيقية /

general truths الحقائق العامة

\* The sun ( rise )..... in the east and sets in the west.

- Something that is true in the present.

شيء دائما صحيح في المضارع

\* Rand ( be )..... 18 years old.

-Fixed timetables and programs (which we can't change) .

البرامج و المواعيد الثابتة .

\* The plane to London ( leave) .....at 5 p.m.

/ is, am, are / نشق (be) إذا كان الفعل الرئيسي أحد أفعال

He , She , It → is

I →am

They , We , You →are

They ( be ) .....tired now.

I ( be ) .....tired now.

She ( be)..... tired now.

ملاحظة : الفعل الرئيسي لا ينفى مباشرة و يجب أن نشترك فعل مساعد إذا لم تحتوي الجملة على فعل مساعد يستثنى من ذلك أفعال ( be ) حيث يجوز نفيها مباشرة سواء كانت فعل مساعد أو رئيسي.

A hmed ( not / be ) ..... happy now.

I ( not / be ) ..... happy now.

They(not / be ) ..... happy now.

إذا كان الفعل الرئيسي (have) نشترك / has, have /  
has →

- I, They, We you have → He, She, It

- We ( have ) ..... a big house

- Salma ( have ) ..... a big house .

- Salma ( not / have ) ..... a big house .

- We ( not/ have ) ..... a big house .

## 2. THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS.....

FORM .....

-Affirmative sentences: .....

1. Sub (I) + am + base verb + ing + complementary.

-I ( study )..... English now

2. Sub (He, She, It) + is + base verb + ing + complementary.

- He ( play ) ..... tennis at the moment

3. Sub (They, We, You) + are + base verb + ing + complementary.

- They ( watch )..... T.V now .

-Negative sentences:.....

Sub +isn't / aren't + am not+ base verb + ing + complementary.

- My father ( not / work ) ..... nowadays.

- Questions.....

Is / Are / Am + sub. + base verb + ing + complementary?

-.....Ahmed ( have)..... his dinner now?

KEY WORDS.....

now/ at this time / right now / at the moment / nowadays / these days / at present/ today/ tonight / this month, week, year / (imperative sentences: look!, listen!, be careful!, watch out!, look out!, don't make noise!, be quiet!

USES .....

- Activity happening at the time of speaking. نشاط يحدث أثناء لحظة الكلام.

\* Ahmed (do)..... his homework at the moment.

-Describe something temporary. وصف شيء مؤقت

\* My father ( work) .....for a big company.

-talk about the future , when something has been planned. للتحدث عن المستقبل , عند التخطيط المسبق لشيء ما

\* They ( get) ..... married next week.

-for actions that happen repeatedly in the present . We use it with always . أفعال تتكرر في المضارع .

- She ..... always ( speak)..... loudly.

1. هناك أفعال تسمى أفعال ثابتة لا تستخدم في المضارع المستمر :

consider, doubt ,fear, forget, lack, want, wish, mind, , concern , imagine, know, remember, regret, realize, believe, hope, feel, think, mean, suppose, recognize, understand, appear, resemble, seem, hate, dislike , like, love , prefer, hear, see, smell, taste, be , come from, contain, include, belong to, need, own , consist of, possess, cost, cut, run out , start, finish, break , graduate, wound

2. بعض هذه الأفعال تأتي حسب معاني مختلفة في الجملة أحيانا تدل على ثبات و أحيانا تدل على استمرارية:

- a. Stand يقف / have, has يتناول / look at ينظر إلى / listen يصغي / ثابت + مستمر →  
b. stand يقف / think يعتقد / have, has يمتلك / look يبدو / fit يناسب / see يرى / ثابت →  
c. think يفكر / fit يجرب / see يقابل / مستمر →

ملاحظة : إذا كان الفعل يأتي على الحالتين نعتد على المؤشرات الموجودة في الجملة لتحديد الحالة المناسبة.

- My father ( have ) .....his breakfast now.
- My father ( have ) .....his breakfast every morning .
- My father ( have ) .....a new car.
- Our school ( stand ) ..... next to the park.
- I ( think ) ..... of buying a new bike.

### 3. THE PRESENT PERFECT.....

#### FORM .....

- Affirmative sentences:.....

1. Sub (I, We, They, You) + have + past participle + complementary.

- I ( do ) ..... my homework.

2. Sub (He, She, It) + has + past participle + complementary.

- Ali ( win ) .....three medals so far .

- Negative sentences.....

1. Sub (I, We, They, You) + haven't + past participle + complementary.

-They ( not/ visit ) .....Petra yet.

2. Sub (He, She, It) + hasn't + past participle + complementary.

Rand ( not/ come ) .....yet .

- Questions.....

1. Have + sub (I, We, They, You) + past participle + complementary?

.....you ever ( see)..... a lion?

2. Has + sub (He, She, It) + past participle + complementary?

..... your father ( finish ) ..... his project yet?

KEY WORDS.....

since, for , so far, just , already , often, twice, yet, once, ever, never, before, recently  
can / can't .....now, over the last + number + time

## USES .....

- talk about something that was true in the past and continues to be true in the present .

التحدث عن شيء كان صحيحا في الماضي واستمر ليكون صحيحا في المضارع

\* **Marah ( be )** ..... in this school since she was 7 years old .

- discuss our experience up to the present . مناقشة تجربة او انجاز حتى الوقت الحاضر .

\* **Fares ( not/ see )** ..... a lion before.

- talk about an action that happened in the past but the consequences of which are important in the present.

التحدث عن فعل حدث في الماضي له آثار هامه في المضارع

\* **Ali ( pass )**..... his driving test , so he can borrow his father's car.

## 4. THE PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS.....

### FORM .....

-Affirmative sentences: .....

1. Sub (I, They, We , You) + have + been + base verb + ing + complementary.

- I ( study ) .....English for three hours now.

2. Sub (He, She, It) + has + been + base verb + ing + complementary.

- She ( wake ) .....up all the night.

- Negative sentences.....

1. Sub (I, We, They, You) + haven't + been + base verb + ing + complementary.

- I (not/ watch ) ..... T.V all the day.

2. Sub (He, She, It) + hasn't + been + base verb +ing + complementary.

- She ( not / swim) .....lately.

- Questions.....

1. Have + sub (I, We, They, You) + been + base verb + ing + complementary?

- .....they ( run )..... all the morning?

2. Has + sub (He, She, It) +been + base verb + ing + complementary?

.....John ( bother) .....you all the time?

KEY WORDS.....

for+ time/ since + time / all + time/ every + time/ this + time / over+ time / always /  
sometimes/ again / lately / today/ because/ think about / think of / think for / is going  
to, why have, has + sub + pp? / is doing badly / is doing good

### USES .....

- a longer action recently finished the result of which are visible in the present .

حدث طويل انتهى مؤخرا و له نتائج مرئية في المضارع .

\* **I ( paint )** ..... the house. That's why I have some paint on my clothes.

- something that begin in the past and continues in the present .

التحدث عن فعل بدا في الماضي و استمر في المضارع

\* **She ( wait )** .....for the bus for a long time .

- an action repeated many times from the past until the present .

حدث تكرر عدة مرات في الماضي حتى المضارع

\* **I ( get )**..... up early for the last two weeks.

\* **I ( do)**..... my home work (I didn't finish it).

- when an action ( still occurring in the present ) started . We use it with since.

عند يبدأ فعل لا يزال يحصل في المضارع

\* **They ( work )** ..... since the morning .

## 5. THE PAST SIMPLE.....

### FORM .....

Affirmative sentences: .....

- Sub (I, We, They, You, He, She, It) + past verb + complementary

Salma (visit)..... Aqaba last week.

- Negative sentences:.....

- Sub (I, We, They, You, He, She, It) + didn't + base verb+ complementary

- They ( not / watch ).....the film yesterday.

- Questions:.....

- Did + sub (I, We, They, You, He, She, It) + base verb + complementary?

..... she ( buy ) .....a new coat last week?

- إذا كان الفعل الرئيسي أحد أفعال (be) نشترك / was, were /

-I, They, We, You → were

/ I, He, She, It → was

-Anas ( be ).....tired last night.

- They ( be ) .....busy last week.

-إذا كان الفعل الرئيسي في الجملة هو (be) و الفاعل هو الضمير ( I ) فإن (be) تحول إلى (were) بشرط أن تحتوي الجملة على wish / if عدا ذلك تحول إلى (was).

If I ( be ).....you, I would study hard.

I wish I ( be).....a doctor.

/ had / إذا كان الفعل الرئيسي (have) يحول إلى /

We ( have).....a delicious meal last Friday.

### KEY WORDS.....

last week/ month/ night / year , ago , in +past time on + past time, yesterday, B.C , wish, in the past, during the last .....months/years/ days/ weeks ....etc, at that time..

### USES .....

- talk about something that started and finished in the past. التحدث عن شيء بدأ و انتهى في الماضي.

\* It (rain )..... heavily last week.

-Describe a routine in the past. وصف روتين أو عادة في الماضي

\* When Loa'i was young, he often (go)..... fishing with his father.

- talk about something that was true for an extended period of time in the past. In this case, we use it with a time phrase. للتحدث عن شيء كان صحيحا لفترة طويلة من الزمن في الماضي

\* Tamara ( live ) ..... in Spain from 2000 to 2010.

## 6. THE PAST CONTINUOUS.....

### FORM .....

Affirmative sentences:.....

1. Sub (I, He, She, It) + was + base verb + ing + complementary.

-While I ( sleep) ....., my father came.

2. Sub (They, We, You) + were + base verb + ing + complementary.

-When I reached the park , my friends ( play ).....

-Negative sentences: .....

Sub +wasn't / weren't + base verb + ing + complementary.

She ( not / study ).....when her mother saw her.

- Questions:.....

Was / Were + sub. + base verb + ing + complementary?

..... they ( shout)..... when you met them?

KEY WORDS.....

when, while, as

- إذا وقعت أحد هذه الظروف في الجملة فإنها تحتوي على فعلين أحدهما ماضي مستمر و الآخر ماضي بسيط .  
- يأتي الماضي المستمر بعد as أو while أما when فيتبعها ماضي بسيط

USES .....

-talk about something which was happening before and after another action in the past.

التحدث عن شيء استمر وقوعه قبل أو بعد فعل آخر في الماضي.

\* While I ( sleep )....., my friend phoned me.

- show that something happened for a long time in the past.

إظهار أن شيئاً حصل لفترة طويلة في الماضي .

\* I (walk ) ..... down the street ,when it began to rain.

7. THE PAST PERFECT. .....

FORM .....

- Affirmative sentences: .....

Sub (I, We, They, You He, She, It) + had + past participle + complementary.

- After I ( do ).....my homework, I went to sleep.

- Negative sentences:.....

- Sub (I, We, They, You He, She, It) + hadn't + past participle + complementary.

- When I met him , he ( not/ finish).....his work yet.

- Questions .....

- Had+ sub (I, We, They, You He, She, It) + past participle + complementary?

.....you ( graduate).....from the university by 2000?

KEY WORDS.....

after, before, when, by the time, never, until, because, by + past time, as soon as.

- هذه الروابط تربط بين جملتين إحداهما ماضي تام و الأخرى ماضي بسيط .

- عند استخدام الماضي التام يجب أن تكون إحدى الجملتين ماضياً بسيطاً .

- الروابط التالية تأتي في الجزء الذي يحتوي على الماضي البسيط .

- الروابط التالية تأتي في الجزء الذي يحتوي على الماضي التام .

-إذا جاءت ( already) في جملة فيها فعل واحد تكون مضارع تام .

(when, before, by the time, by +past time)

(After , already, until, never)

\*I have already done my homework.

-إذا سبق (never) مضارع يتبعها مضارع تام أو بسيط.

\* He is always busy. He (has never come) / (doesn't come) home late.

- إذا جاءت (until, never) في جملة واحدة تكون (never) أولاً و معها ماضي تام ثم (until) و معها ماضي بسيط

\* I had never driven a car until I was 20

- إذا سبق ( because ) ماضي بسيط من غير أفعال (be) يتبعها ماضي تام.

\* I made a big meal because I had invited a lot of friends.

USES .....

- talk about actions that happened before a specific moment in the past.

التحدث عن أفعال وقعت قبل لحظة معينة في الماضي .

- By the time we arrived, the film (start).....

## 8. THE SIMPLE FUTURE:.....

### FORM .....

#### A. will + infinitive:.....

- Affirmative sentences:.....

-Sub (I, We, They, You He, She, It) + will + infinitive + complementary.

I ( visit)..... London next week.

- Negative sentences:.....

- Sub (I, We, They, You He, She, It) + will not (won't) + infinitive + complementary.

-They ( not / come) .....tomorrow.

- Questions:.....

- Will+ sub (I, We, They, You He, She, It) + infinitive + complementary?

..... you ( meet) .....your friend next week?

#### B . (be) + going to + infinitive: .....

1. Sub (I) + am + going to + infinitive + complementary.

- I have phoned my friend .I ( meet).....him next week.

2. Sub (He, She, It) +is + going to + infinitive + complementary.

Laith has studied hard . He ( pass)..... the exam tomorrow.

3. Sub (They, We, You) + are + going to + infinitive + complementary.

- We have scored five goals . We ( win ).....

-Negative sentences:.....

Sub +isn't / aren't / am not+ going to + infinitive + complementary.

The sky is clear . It ( not/ rain).....

- Questions:.....

Is / Are / Am + sub. + going to + infinitive + complementary?

You are interested in music. ....you ( be ) ..... a famous musician?

### KEY WORDS.....

next week/ month/ year/ .....etc, in / on + future date, tomorrow, the following day / week  
.....etc / the coming Saturday / week ....etc, in the future, soon, then,

### USES .....

#### A. will + infinitive:.....

- talk about the future if we are predicting it without evidence.

التحدث عن المستقبل إذا كان هناك توقع له بدون دليل

\* It ( be ) ..... better tomorrow.

- express spontaneous decision .

التعبير عن القرار المفاجئ

\* The doorbell is ringing . I ( see) .....who is on the door.

- we can use it with sure, soon ,imagine, perhaps , probably ,maybe think and hope .

sure, soon , imagine , perhaps , probably , maybe think and hope يمكننا استخدامه مع

\* I think it ( be ) .....hot today.

#### B . (be) + going to + infinitive: .....

- future plans .It doesn't have to be a near future. الخطط المستقبلية .ليس من الضروري ان تكون للمستقبل القريب

\* When I finish my project , I ( take ) ..... a long vacation.

- predictions that are based on evidence. . تنبؤات مبنية على دليل .

\* Look at the clouds . It ( rain ) .....

**Correct the verbs between brackets :**

1. Your body (contain) ..... too much water.
2. The film (start)..... two minutes ago.
3. Listen! Somebody (come) .....
4. I wish I (be) ..... rich.
5. My brother (do) ..... his homework. He can go out now.
6. They (know) .....each other for five years until now.
7. You look tired because you (work) .....all the night.
8. Brazil (win) .....the world cup five times so far.
9. Look at the clouds. It (rain).....
10. I am sure Ali (pass) .....the exam tomorrow.
11. By 2000, I ( graduate ) ..... from the university.
12. While I ( watch ) ..... T.V the doorbell rang.
13. No one can imagine what (happen) ..... in the future.
14. It (be) ..... hot over the last three days.
15. Somebody (steal) ..... my car. It isn't in the garage.

**THE PASSIVE**

Active	Passive
1.(modal )+ base form	(modal )+ be+ v3
2.(modal)+ have+ v3	(modal)+ have+ been + v3
3. Present Simple ( base form )/ ( base form + s/es )	is/ am/ are + v3
4. past simple (v2)	was / were+ v3
5.Present Continuous( is / am / are + verb + ing )	is / am / are + being + v3
6.Past Continuous ( was/were+ verb+ ing)	was/ were +being+ v3
7. Present Perfect(has/ have + v3)	has/ have + been + v3
8. Past Perfect (had+ v3)	had+ been + v3

- إذا كان المفعول به على شكل ضمير فانه يحول إلى ضمير فاعل عند الحل كما يلي:.

<b>Subject Pronouns</b>	<b>I</b>	<b>THEY</b>	<b>WE</b>	<b>YOU</b>	<b>HE</b>	<b>SHE</b>	<b>IT</b>
<b>Object Pronouns</b>	<b>ME</b>	<b>THEM</b>	<b>US</b>	<b>YOU</b>	<b>HIM</b>	<b>HER</b>	<b>IT</b>

ملاحظة : إذا كان الفاعل في جملة المبني للمعلوم يبدأ بـ ( no one / nothing / nobody ) فان الجملة تنفى عند تحويلها إلى مبني للمجهول.

**Rewrite :**

1. Students must obey their teacher .  
Students' teacher.....
2. Ali might have built a new villa .  
A new villa .....
3. Jordan spends a lot of money on technology.  
A lot of money .....
4. I ate two apples yesterday .  
Two apples .....
5. We are revising the passive now.  
The passive.....
6. Salam was studying English.  
English .....
7. The students have passed the exam.  
The exam.....
8. John had won two medals.  
Two medals.....

**REPORTED SPEECH**

(STATEMENT) تحويل الجملة الخبرية

1. تحويل الأفعال:

Direct مباشر	Reported غير مباشر	Direct مباشر	Reported غير مباشر
<b>Simple Present</b>	<b>Simple Past</b>	<b>Simple Past</b>	<b>Past Perfect</b>
play / plays	Played	played	had played
eat / eats	ate	ate	had eaten
don't / doesn't play	didn't play	didn't play	hadn't played
do go / does go	Went	did go / went	had gone
is / am	was	was	had been
are	Were	were	had been
have / has	Had	had	had had
<b>Present Continuous</b>	<b>Past Continuous</b>	<b>Past Continuous</b>	<b>Past Perfect Continuous</b>
is / am / are + v + ing	was / were + v + ing	was / were + v + ing	had + been + v + ing
<b>Present Perfect</b>	<b>Past Perfect</b>	<b>Past Perfect</b>	<b>Past Perfect</b>
have / has + pp	had + pp	had + pp	had + pp
<b>Present Perfect Continuous</b>	<b>Past Perfect Continuous</b>	<b>Past Perfect Continuous</b>	<b>Past Perfect Continuous</b>
has / have + been + v + ing	had + been + v + ing	had + been + v + ing	had + been + v + ing
<b>Modals</b>			
Will	Would		
Shall	Should		
Can	Could		
Must	had to		
have to	had to		
has to	had to		
May	Might		
ought to	ought to		
had better	had better		
would rather	would rather		

## 2. تحويل الضمانر :

- ( حسب القائل )  
• I → he / she , me → him / her , my → his / her mine → his / hers
- ( مباشرة )  
• We → they , our → their , us → them , our s → theirs
- ( حسب المخاطب )  
• you + me = I , you + مفرد مذكر = he , you + مفرد مؤنث = she , you + جمع = they , you + us = we . ( you / فاعل )
- ( مفعول به / you )  
• you + me = me , you + مفرد مذكر = him , you + مفرد مؤنث = her , you + جمع = them , you + us = us .
- your + me = my , your + مفرد مذكر = his , Your + مفرد مؤنث = her , your + جمع = their , your + us = our

ملاحظات : يتم ربط الضميرين ( you , your ) مع آخر كلمة أو ضمير في جملة الحل المعطاة لمعرفة التحويل المناسب لهما .  
عند تحويل الضمير (your) إلى ما يناسبه يتم كتابة الاسم الذي يليه مباشرة في الحل.

## 3. تحويل الظروف :

Direct مباشر	Reported غير مباشر	Direct مباشر	Reported غير مباشر
Today	on that day	next ( x )	the ( x ) after
tonight	that night	next month	the month after
at the moment	at that time / moment	here	There
yesterday	the day before	now	at that time / then
tomorrow	the day after	last ( x ) /	the ( x ) before
tomorrow ( x )	the following ( x )	last year	the year before
tomorrow morning	the following morning	ago	Before
this ( x ) / this (day)	that( x ) / that(day)	three years ago	three years before
yet	up to till	since (x)	the ( x ) before

## Demonstrative adjectives. صفات الإشارة.

this	that
these	those

**Rewrite :**

1. 'I visited Cairo last year.'  
He said that .....
2. 'I am studying English at the moment.'  
He added that .....
3. 'I'm sure the soup will be delicious.'  
He said that .....
4. 'Mum , I was working on my application all evening.'  
Mais told Mum that .....
5. ' We made a big party last week.'  
Amro told Yaser that .....
6. 'Heba's taken my CD player.'  
Hind told Eman that .....
7. 'We don't argue about anything. '  
They said that .....
8. ' We are taking our grandchildren on holiday .'  
They said they .....
9. ' My brother is making a graduation party this week .'  
Lana told Shoruq that .....
10. 'The engineers are going to design the new highway next month .'  
The manager said that .....

**تمارين الكتاب**

**Grammar: Revision of the tenses**

**5 / SB, page 7 :**

**Work in pairs. In the article on page 6, find one sentence with each of the following grammatical structures. Then, in your notebook, write your own sentences for each of the items and tell your partner.**

1. The Present Simple :.....
2. The Present Continuous.....
3. The Present Perfect:.....
4. The Present Perfect Continuous :.....
5. The Past Simple :.....
6. The Past Perfect :.....
7. The Present Simple Passive :.....
8. The Past Simple Passive :.....
9. The Future with will :.....
10. The Future with going to :.....

6 / SB, page 7 :

Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

People (1)..... (use) smartphones since they (2)..... (invent) in the early 2000s. During the early 2000s, people (3)..... (buy) phones in different colours and different designs. In 2010 CE, the first tablet computer (4)..... (produce). By the end of 2010 CE, companies (5) ..... (sell) more smartphones than PCs for the first time. Now, about one billion smartphones (6)..... (sell) around the world each year. In the near future, it (7).....( estimate) that over 40% of the population in Jordan will have a smartphone. It is probable that this market (8)..... (expand) in the future. At the moment, people aged 16-30(9)..... (buy) the most smartphones, but experts say there (10)..... (be) a growth in the number of older people buying smartphones in the future.

4 / SB, page 10 :

Write the sentences from the recording in reported speech.

1. 'Many computers have filters which stop people seeing certain websites.'

He said that many computers had filters which stopped people seeing certain websites.

2. 'If they share information on social media with their friends, it might be accessed by other people, too.'

He said that .....

3. 'On social media, you should only connect to people you know well.'

He said that .....

4. 'Later we will give you, our dear listeners, information about websites where you can find more advice on Internet safety.'

He said that .....

5 / SB, page 10 :

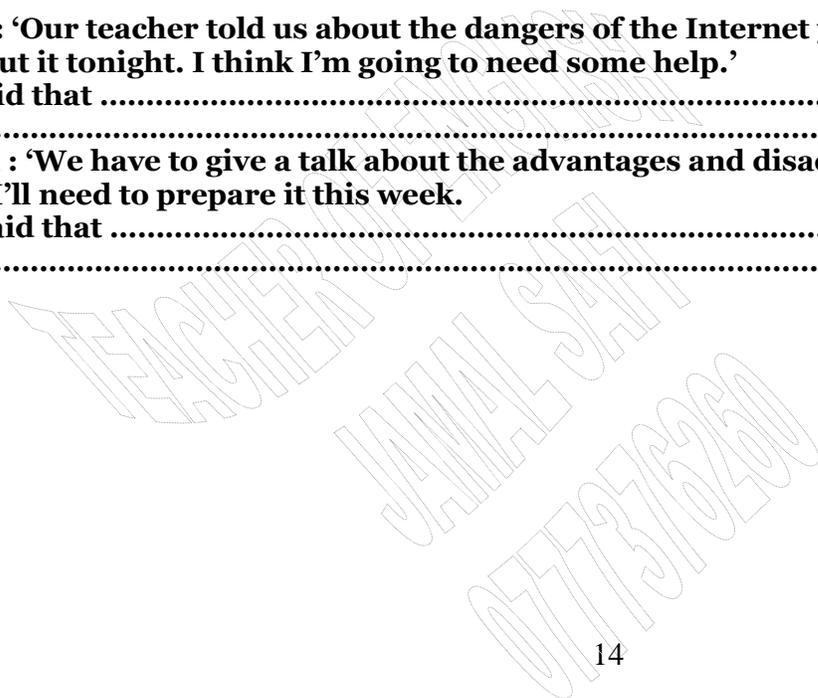
Report what these people are saying. Pay attention to the time phrases.

1. Farida : 'Our teacher told us about the dangers of the Internet yesterday. I have to write an essay about it tonight. I think I'm going to need some help.'

Farida said that .....

2. Saleem : 'We have to give a talk about the advantages and disadvantages of the Internet next week, so I'll need to prepare it this week.'

Saleem said that .....



4 / WB, page 7 :

Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. The first one is done for you.

In 1943 CE, the chairman of a 'business machines' company (1) said (say) that the world only (2)..... (need) two or three computers. He (3)..... (be) wrong! Since then, there (4)..... (be) a technological revolution. These days, millions of families (5)..... (have) at least one computer at home, and many people (6)..... (carry) smartphones and tablets with them everywhere. A few people even (7)..... (wear) them – either on their wrists, round their necks or on their belts. There's even more: experts say that one day soon we (8)..... (attach) them to our skin!

5 / WB, page 7 :

Choose the correct form of the verbs. below. The first one is done for you.

1. Children often **use** / **are using** computers better than their parents.
2. If you **will play** / **play** computer games all day, you won't have time to study.
3. I want **to get** / **getting** a tablet, but I can't afford **to buy** / **buying** one at the moment.
4. Look at the black sky! It's **raining** / **going to rain** soon!
5. I'm **coming** / **come** from Ajloun, but I'm **staying** / **stay** in Irbid for a few months. I will return to Ajloun in the spring.
6. Nadia has **been doing** / **done** her homework for two hours! She **is** / **will be** finished very soon.
7. If Ali **had** / **has** his own computer, he **wouldn't** / **doesn't** need to use his friend's computer.
8. I **was writing** / **wrote** an email when my laptop **was switching** / **switched** itself off.

6 / WB, page 7 :

Rewrite the sentences with the words in brackets. The first one is done for you.

1. Perhaps Issa's phone is broken. (might)  
Issa's phone might be broken.
2. Somebody has found my missing laptop. (been)  
My .....
3. I asked someone to fix my computer. (had)  
I .....
4. It isn't necessary to switch off the screen. (have)  
You .....
5. You are not allowed to touch this machine. (must)  
You .....
6. I think you should send a text message. (would)  
If .....
7. Press that button to make the picture move. (moves)  
If you .....
8. Mohammad checked his emails, and then he started work. (before)  
Mohammad had.....

# Vocabulary

The word (s)	English Meaning	Arabic Meaning
access	to find information, especially on a computer	إيجاد معلومات
blog	a regularly updated personal website or web page, usually written in an informal style	مدونة
calculation	a way of using numbers in order to find out an amount, price or value	عملية حسابية
computer chip	a small piece inside a computer which stores information via an electric current	رقاقة الحاسوب
email exchange	a series of emails between two or more people, each email generally a reply to the previous one email	تبادل الرسائل الإلكترونية
filter	a program that checks whether certain content on a web page should be displayed to the viewer	يفضي
floppy disk	a flexible, removable magnetic disk that stores computer information	القرص المرن
ICT	Information and Communication Technology	معلومات و تكنولوجيا الاتصال
identity fraud	illegal actions using the identity of someone else, normally to buy things	سرقة البيانات الشخصية
PC	an abbreviation for personal computer, a computer that is used by one person at a time	الحاسوب الشخصي
post	to put a message or document on the Internet so that other people can see it	يرسل
privacy settings	controls available on social networking sites which let you decide who can see what information	إعدادات الخصوصية
program	a set of instructions enabling a computer to function;	برمجية
programme	content which is intended to be listened to on radio or watched on television	برنامج إذاعي أو تلفزيوني
rely on	to have trust or confidence in something or someone	يعتمد على
sat nav system	satellite navigation system , a system of computers and satellites, used in cars and other places that tells you where something is, where you are or how to get to a place	نظام الأقمار الصناعية البحرية
security settings	controls available on computer programs protect your computer from viruses.	إعدادات الحماية
smartphone	a mobile phone with advanced computing technology	الهاتف الذكي
social media	social interaction between people and communities on websites or blogs	مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي
tablet computer	a mobile computer, with a touch screen, processor and battery all in one unit	كمبيوتر لوحي
user	a person who uses a product or service, especially a computer or another machine	مستخدم
web-building program	a software that helps you to create a website	برمجية إنشاء موقع إلكتروني
web hosting	the business of housing, serving and maintaining files for one or more websites	استضافة موقع إلكتروني
whiteboard	a touch screen computer program that enables you to draw sketches, write and present ideas and talks to colleagues or students	لوحة مغناطيسي
World Wide Web	an information system, known as the Internet, which allows documents to be connected to other documents, and for people to search for information by moving from one document to another	الشبكة العنكبوتية

### Phrases with different meanings

share ideas	to give your idea to another person or a group	تشارك الأفكار
compare ideas	where two or more people consider how their ideas are similar or different	تبادل الأفكار
create a web site	to construct a website that currently does not exist	إنشاء موقع على شبكة الانترنت
contribute to a web site	offer your writing and work to the website	المساهمة في موقع على شبكة الانترنت
research information	to use a variety of sources to find the information you need	البحث عن معلومات
present information	to give the results of your research in a presentation	تقديم معلومات
monitor what is happening	you know what is happening and you are following the developments	مراقبة ما يحدث
find out what is happening	you don't know what is happening and you want to discover it	يعرف ما يحدث
give a talk to people	you have prepared a speech and you are giving this speech to a group of people who are expecting it	إلقاء محاضرة بالناس
talk to people	an informal discussion	التحدث مع الناس
show photos	you show people photos that you have in person	عرض الصور
send photos	you send photos to someone over the Internet or by post	إرسال الصور

### Phrasal verbs and prepositions

get started	يبدأ	know about	يعرف عن
look around	يلقي نظرة / ينظر إلى	connect with	يتصل مع
settle down	يستقر	turn on	يشغل
take place	يحدث	give out	ينشر
meet up	يقابل / يلتقي	fill in	يعبئ
wake up	يستيقظ		

## تمارين الكتاب

4 / SB, page 9 :

Work in pairs. Explain the difference in meaning between these phrases from the article.

1. to share / compare ideas

.....  
.....

2. to create / contribute to a website

.....  
.....

3. to research / present information

.....  
.....

4. to monitor / find out what is happening

.....  
.....

5. to give a talk to / talk to people

.....  
.....

6. to show / send photos

.....  
.....

5 / SB, page 9 :

Complete the sentences so they are true for you. Work in pairs.

1. My teacher says I must .....

2. In our English lessons, I can .....

3. I use technology to .....

4. Next year, I will start .....

5. If I had more time, I would .....

6. If I use a computer, I .....

7. If the teacher gives us homework today, I .....

3 / SB, page 10 :

Complete the verb phrases and phrasal verbs with the correct words.

1. to know..... dangers of the Internet.

2. to connect ..... people on the Internet.

3. to turn ..... privacy settings.

4. to give ..... personal information.

5. to fill ..... a form.

1 / WB, page 6 :

Match the descriptions with the words in the box. One word is not needed. The first one is done for you.

computer chip , calculation , floppy disk ,  
smartphone , program , PC , World Wide Web

- 1. a mobile phone that connects to the Internet smartphone
- 2. a very small piece found inside every computer \_\_\_\_\_
- 3. a small square piece of plastic that was used to store information from computers \_\_\_\_\_
- 4. a computer designed for one person to use \_\_\_\_\_
- 5. when you use maths to work out an answer \_\_\_\_\_
- 6. all the information shared by computers through the Internet \_\_\_\_\_

2 / WB, page 6 :

Choose the correct word.

- 1. Modern computers can run a lot of programs / models at the same time.
- 2. You can move around the computer screen using a tablet / mouse.
- 3. From 1990 CE to 2000 CE was a decade / generation.
- 4. A laptop / tablet doesn't need a keyboard.
- 5. The television was first invented / developed by John Logie Baird.

3 / WB, page 6 :

Complete the sentences. Use words from exercises 1 and 2.

- 1. Although they are pocket-sized, \_\_\_\_\_s are powerful computers as well as phones.
- 2. My brother is learning how to write computer \_\_\_\_\_s.
- 3. I need to make a few \_\_\_\_\_s before I decide how much to spend.
- 4. Mobile phones used to be huge. Early \_\_\_\_\_s were as big as bricks!
- 5. I can close the lid of my \_\_\_\_\_ and then put it in my bag.

7 / WB, page 7 :

Answer the following questions.

- 1. Which of these is an invention – the TV or gravity? Explain your answer.  
.....
- 2. What is the difference between a smartphone and an ordinary mobile phone?  
.....
- 3. If you need to make a calculation, what do you usually use?  
.....
- 4. Which would you rather have – a PC, a tablet or a laptop? Why?  
.....
- 5. Do you usually use a floppy disk? If not, what do you use?  
.....

# Reading

\*\*\*\*الكلمات الضرورية المستخدمة في أسئلة القطع الوزارية \*\*\*\*

Find	جد	Factors	عوامل
Quote	اقتبس	Influence, Impact, Effect	تأثير
Underlined	تحت خط	According to	وفقا لـ / حسب
Pronoun	ضمير	View , Opinion , Attitude	وجهة نظر
Text	نص	Sentence	جملة
Paragraph	فقرة	Indicate, Show	يشير, يبين
Write down	اكتب	Why	لماذا
Examples	أمثلة	How	كيف
Mention	اذكر / عدد	When	متى
Features, Qualities	خصائص	Who	من
Objectives, Aims	أهداف	Where	أين
First	أول	What	ما / ماذا
Second	ثاني	Which	أي / الذي
Third	ثالث	How many	كم عدد
Last	آخر / أخير	How long	كم طول المدة
Word	كلمة	Causes, Reasons	أسباب
Refer to	يعود على	A part from	باستثناء
Describe	صف	Results	نتائج
Advantages , Benefits	إيجابيات , فوائد	Mean	يعني
Explain	وضح	Justify	برر
Suggest	اقترح	Ways	طرق
Characteristics	خصائص	Steps	خطوات
Difficulties	صعوبات	Consequences	آثار

\*\*\* كيف تتعامل مع أسئلة القطعة في الامتحان الوزاري \*\*\*

## Question Number one .

A.

- ..... Write down two of them / Write them down.
- ..... Write down two of them / Write them down.

يكون المطلوب في هذين السؤالين أن تذكر نقطتين على كل منهما حاول التقيد بما هو مطلوب بالسؤال حتى تحصل على علامته كاملة. مفتاح الحل  
العبارة التي قبل كلمة **Write**

- Quote /Write down the sentence which indicates that .....

المطلوب في هذا السؤال اقتباس جملة من النص . انتبه لما هو مكتوب بعد **that** لتحديد الجملة المناسبة من النص ثم اكتبها كاملة بحيث تبدأ بحرف **capital** و تنهي بنقطة. مفتاح الحل العبارة التي بعد كلمة **that**

- Find a word in the (first /second/third/fourth/fifth / last ) paragraph which means

.....

المطلوب في هذا السؤال إيجاد كلمة من الفقرة التي ذكر رقمها في السؤال لها نفس معنى العبارة أو الكلمة التي بعد كلمة **means** عليك أن تحفظ معاني المفردات الواردة في القطع للإجابة على هذا السؤال  
ملاحظة هامة : عندما تجد الإجابة انقلها إلى دفتر إجابتك كما وردت في النص تماما دون تغيير.

- Replace the underlined word with suitable phrasal verb / idiom that has the same meaning.  
المطلوب استبدال الكلمة التي تحتها خط بشبه فعل / مصطلح مناسب له نفس المعنى . عليك أن تحفظ المصطلحات المطلوبة منك مع الانتباه لزم الفعل وكتابته بشكل صحيح إملايا.

- What does the underlined word ..... mean ?

المطلوب معرفة معنى الكلمة التي تحتها خط  
عليك أن تحفظ معاني المفردات الواردة في القطع للإجابة على هذا السؤال.

5. What does the underlined word .....refer to ?

المطلوب في هذا السؤال معرفة على ماذا يعود الضمير الذي تحته خط .  
اقرأ الجملة التي تحتوي على الضمير. حدد نوعه قبل أن تعتمد إجابة معينة .  
ملاحظة هامة : عندما تجد الإجابة انقلها إلى دفتر إجابتك كما وردت في النص تماما دون تغيير.

he , him , his	اسم مذكر عاقل
they , them , their	اسم جمع ( عاقل / غير عاقل )
she , her	اسم مؤنث عاقل
it, its	اسم مفرد غير عاقل
who , which , where	الاسم السابق لها مباشرة
this , so	جملة سابقة لها
there, here	اسم مكان

B. Critical Thinking: التفكير الناقد

1. According to the text , the writer ( thinks , says, considers , states ) that.....  
Explain this statement, suggesting/ mentioning / giving three ways / reasons / pieces of advice .....

المطلوب في هذا السؤال توضيح العبارة التي بعد that مقترحا/ ذاكرا / معطيا / ثلاثة طرق / أسباب / نصائح لها علاقة بالعبارة التي بعد that  
افهم هذه العبارة جيدا اربطها بما تعرفه عن النص بشكل عام ثم اكتب ثلاثة طرق/ أسباب / نصائح مناسبة.

2. .... . Think of this statement and, in two sentences, write down your point of view.

المطلوب في هذا السؤال التفكير في العبارة المعطاة و كتابة وجهة نظرك . أبدا إجابتك بعبارة تفيد الرأي مثل / I think that  
In my opinion. اكتب الجملة التي وردت في بداية السؤال . اعتبر أن هذه العبارة موضوع تعبير بسيط المطلوب منك إبداء رأيك في جملتين  
على الأقل , إذا وجدت صعوبة . ابحث في النص عن جملتين ( فكرتين ) , حاول صياغة ما تكتبه بطريقتك الخاصة و تجنب النسخ من النص قدر الإمكان.

TEACHER OF ENGLISH  
JAMAL SAH  
0777376260

## THE HISTORY OF COMPUTERS

### KEY WORDS

calculation	a way of using numbers in order to find out an amount, price or value	عملية حسابية
computer chip	a small piece inside a computer which stores information via an electric current	رقاقة حاسوب
floppy disk	a flexible, removable magnetic disk that stores computer information	قرص مرن
PC	an abbreviation for personal computer, a computer that is used by one person at a time	الحاسوب الشخصي
program	a set of instructions enabling a computer to function;	برمجية
smartphone	a mobile phone with advanced computing technology	
World Wide Web	an information system, known as the Internet, which allows documents to be connected to other documents, and for people to search for information by moving from one document to another	الشبكة العنكبوتية

When you are using a computer, think about the technology that is needed for **it** to work. People have been using types of computers for thousands of years. A metal machine was found on the seabed in Greece that was more than 2,000 years old. It is believed that this was the first ever computer.

عندما تستخدم كمبيوتر، فكر في التكنولوجيا اللازمة لعمله. استخدم الناس أنواع مختلفة من الحواسيب لآلاف السنين. آلة معدنية على قاع البحر في اليونان أكثر من 2,000 سنة. ويعتقد أن هذا هو أول جهاز الكمبيوتر.

In the 1940s, technology had developed enough for inventors to make the first generation of modern computers. One such model was so large that it needed a room that was 167 square meters to accommodate it. During that decade, scientists in England developed the first computer program. It took 25 minutes to complete one calculation.

في الأربعينيات، التكنولوجيا تطورت بما فيه الكفاية للمبدعين ليصنعوا الجيل الأول من أجهزة الكمبيوتر الحديثة. أحد هذه النماذج كان كبيرا جدا بحيث يحتاج إلى غرفة بمساحة 167 متر مربع لاستيعابه. خلال ذلك العقد، العلماء في إنجلترا طوروا أول برنامج كمبيوتر. استغرق 25 دقيقة لكي تكتمل أول عملية حسابية.

In 1958 CE, the computer chip was developed. The first computer game was produced in 1962 CE, followed two years later by the computer mouse. In 1971 CE, the floppy disk was invented, which meant that information could be shared between

computers. The first PC (personal computer) was produced in 1974 CE, so people could buy computers to use at home.

في 1958 ميلادي , تطورت شرائح الكمبيوتر. أول لعبة كمبيوتر كانت في 1962 ميلادي . بعد عامين من فأرة الحاسوب. في 1971 ميلادي. تم اختراع الأقراص المرنة، مما يعني أن المعلومات يمكن مشاركتها بين أجهزة الكمبيوتر. أول كمبيوتر (الحاسوب الشخصي) انتج في 1974 ميلادي ،لذلك استطاع الناس شراء أجهزة الكمبيوتر لاستخدامها فالمنازل.

In 1983 CE, people could buy a laptop for the first time. Then, in 1990 CE, the British scientist Tim Berners-Lee developed the World Wide Web. It was not until 2007 CE

that the first smart phones appeared. Today, most people use their mobile phones every day.

في 1983. تمكن الناس من شراء كمبيوتر محمول للمرة الأولى. وبعد ذلك، في 1990 قام العالم البريطاني تيم بيرنرز لي بتطوير شبكة الويب العالمية. لم يكن هناك ظهور لأول الهواتف الذكية حتى 2007. اليوم ،معظم الناس يستخدمون هواتفهم المحمولة كل يوم.

What will happen in the future? You can already buy watches which can do the same

as mobile phones. Scientists have also developed glasses that are capable of doing

even more than this. Life in the future is going to see further changes in computer

technology. It is likely that all aspects of everyday life will rely on a computer

program, from how we travel to how our homes are heated.

ماذا سيحدث في المستقبل ؟ يمكنك الآن شراء الساعات التي يمكن أن تفعل نفس الهواتف المحمولة. العلماء أيضا طوروا نظارات قادرة على القيام حتى أكثر من هذا. الحياة في المستقبل سترى المزيد من التغييرات في تكنولوجيا الحاسوب. ومن المرجح أن جميع جوانب الحياة اليومية سوف تعتمد على برامج الكمبيوتر، من كيفية السفر إلى كيفية تدفئة منازلنا.

## تمارين الكتاب

3 / SB, page 6 :

- How old is the world's oldest computer?

.....

4 / SB, page 6 :

read the article again and answer the questions.

1. Where was the first ever computer found? .....

2. What information in the text shows that the first modern computers were very large?

.....

3. List the invention that were completed between 1958 CE and 1974 CE.

.....

4. How do you think computer technology will develop further in the future? How far do you agree with the article?

.....

5. We rely more and more on computer technology. How far do you agree that this is a positive development?

.....

.....

.....

6. Which form of modern technology do you think is the most useful? Why?

.....  
.....

7. What are the advantages and disadvantages of having laptop computers, tablet computers or smartphones?

.....  
.....  
.....

8. What would life be like without computers?

.....  
.....  
.....

**COMPREHENSION TEST**

1. Who developed the world wide web?

.....

2. There are two machines can do the same work as mobile phones . Write them down.

.....

3. There are two invention were completed in 1940s. write down these two inventions.

.....

4. Write down the sentence which indicates that the size of the first generation of the modern computers was so large.

.....  
.....

5. Quote the sentence which indicates that the first computer program was very slow.

.....

6. What does the underlined phrasal verb **rely on** mean ?

.....

7. Find a compound noun in the third paragraph which means ‘a flexible, removable magnetic disk that stores computer information’

.....

8. What do the underlined words (pronouns) refer to?

.....

**Critical thinking :**

1. The writer states that the World Wide Web was developed in 1990. Explain this statement mentioning three benefits of using it.

.....  
.....  
.....

2. We rely more and more on computer technology. Think of this statement and ,in two sentences , write down your point of view.

.....  
.....  
.....

## using technology in class

## KEY WORDS

blog	a regularly updated personal website or web page, usually written in an informal style	مدونة
email exchange	a series of emails between two or more people, each email generally a reply to the previous one email	تبادل الرسائل الالكترونية
social media	social interaction between people and communities on websites or blogs	مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي
tablet computer	a mobile computer, with a touch screen, processor and battery all in one unit	كمبيوتر لوحي
whiteboard	a touch screen computer program that enables you to draw sketches, write and present ideas and talks to colleagues or students	لوحة مغناطيسي
post	to put a message or document on the Internet so that other people can see it	يرسل

Young people love learning, but they like learning even more if they are presented with information in an interesting and challenging way. Today, I am going to give a talk about how you can use technology in Jordanian classrooms. Here are some ideas:

الشباب يحبون التعلم, لكن يحبون ذلك أكثر إذا قدمت لهم معلومات بطريقة ممتعة و فيها نوع من التحدي . اليوم , سألقي محاضرة عن كيفية استخدام التكنولوجيا في الصفوف الدراسية للأردنيين . هنا بعض الأفكار.

Many classrooms now use a whiteboard as a computer screen. As a consequence, teachers can show websites on the board in front of the class. Teachers can then use the Internet to show educational programmes, play educational games, music, recordings of languages, and so on.

الكثير من الصفوف تستخدم الآن اللوح المغناطيسي كشاشة كمبيوتر . نتيجة لذلك , يستطيع المعلمون عرض المواقع الالكترونية على اللوح أمام الصف . بعد ذلك يستطيع المعلمون استخدام الانترنت لعرض البرامج التعليمية , تشغيل العاب تعليمية , الموسيقى , تسجيلات للغات , و هكذا.

In some countries, tablet computers are available for students to use in class.

Therefore, students can use the tablets to do tasks such as showing photographs, researching information, recording interviews and creating diagrams. Tablets are ideal for pair and group work.

في بعض الدول , الحواسيب اللوحية متوفرة للطلاب لاستخدامها في الصف . لذلك , يمكن للطلاب استخدامها للقيام بمهام مثل عرض الصور , معلومات البحث , تسجيل المقابلات و إنشاء الرسوم البيانية . الحواسيب اللوحية مثالية للعمل الثنائي أو الجماعي .

Teachers can perhaps ask their students to start writing a blog (an online diary), either about their own lives or as if they were someone famous. They can also create a website for the classroom. Students can contribute to the website, so for example they can post work, photos and messages.

قد يطلب المعلمون من طلابهم البدء بكتابة مدونة (مذكورة على الانترنت) إما عن حياتهم أو اعتبار أنفسهم أشخاص مشهورين. بإمكانهم أيضا إنشاء موقعا الكترونيا لصفهم. الطلاب يمكنهم المساهمة في الموقع, لذلك يمكنهم مثلا إرسال أعمالهم و صورهم و رسائلهم.

**Most young people communicate through social media, by which they send each other photos and messages via the Internet. Some students like to send messages that are under 140 letters for anyone to read. Teachers can ask students to summarise information about what they have learnt in class in the same way. If students learn to summarise quickly, they will be able to use this skill in future.**

غالبية الشباب يتواصلون من خلال مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي, من خلالها يرسلون صور لبعضهم البعض عبر الانترنت. بعض الطلاب يفضلون إرسال رسائل تكون أقل من 140 حرف لأي شخص لقراءتها. قد يطلب المعلمون من طلابهم تلخيص ما تعلموه في الصف بنفس الطريقة. إذا تعلم الطلاب التلخيص بسرعة فأنهم سيكونون قادرين على استخدام هذه المهارة في المستقبل.

**We all like to send emails, don't we? Email exchanges are very useful in the classroom. Teachers can ask students to email what they have learnt to students of a similar age at another school. They could even email students in another country. As a result, students can then share information and help each other with tasks.**

نحب جميعا إرسال الايميلات, أليس كذلك؟ تبادل الايميلات مفيد جدا في الغرفة الصفية. يمكن للمعلمين إن يطلبوا من طلابهم إرسال ما تعلموه الى طلاب من نفس أعمارهم في مدرسة أخرى. حتى بإمكانهم مراسلة طلاب في دولة أخرى. نتيجة لذلك, يمكن للطلاب فيما بعد التشارك في المعلومات و مساعدة بعضهم البعض في المهمات الموكلة إليهم.

**Another way of communicating with other schools is through talking to people over the computer. Most computers have cameras, so you can also see the people you are talking to. In this way, students who are studying English in Jordan can see what students in England are doing in the classroom while they are speaking to them. You can also use this system to invite guest speakers to give talks over a computer. For example, scientists or teachers from another country could give a lesson to the class. If you had this type of lesson, the students would be very excited.**

طريقة أخرى مع المدارس الأخرى هي التحدث مع الناس من خلال الحاسوب. معظم الحواسيب لها كاميرات, لذلك بإمكانك أن ترى الناس الذين تتحدث معهم. بهذه الطريقة, الطلاب الذين يتعلمون الإنجليزية في الأردن بإمكانهم رؤية ما يفعله الطلاب الانجليز في الصف أثناء التحدث معهم. بإمكانك أيضا استخدام هذا النظام لدعوة المتحدثين الضيوف للحديث عبر الحاسوب. مثلا, العلماء أو المعلمون من دولة أخرى يمكنهم إعطاء درس للصف. إذا عندك هذا النوع من الدروس, فإن الطلاب سيكونون مستمتعين.

**Students often use computers at home if they have them. Students can use social media on their computers to help them with their studies, including asking other students to check and compare their work, asking questions and sharing ideas.**

**The teacher must be part of the group, too, to monitor what is happening.  
Thank you for listening. Does anyone have any questions?**

الطلاب غالبا يستخدمون الحواسيب في المنازل أن توفرت. الطلاب يمكنهم استخدام مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي في حواسيبهم لمساعدتهم في دراستهم, يشمل هذا الطلب من الطلاب الآخرين تبادل العمل و التحقق منه, طرح الأسئلة و تبادل الأفكار . المعلم يجب أن يكون جزءا من المجموعة أيضا, لمراقبة ما يجري. شكرا لاستماعكم . هل من احد عنده أسئلة؟

### تمارين الكتاب

1 /SB, page 8 :

Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.

1- In what ways can digital information be used to educate people?

.....  
.....  
.....

2- Do you think that computers will replace books one day? Why / Why not?

.....  
.....  
.....

3 / SB, page 9 :

Which of the following would you use to ...

blog, email exchange, social media, tablet computer ,whiteboard

1. record interviews with people? **tablet computer**
2. share information with students in another country? .....
3. watch educational programmes in class? .....
4. ask another student to check your homework? .....
5. write an online diary? .....

6 /SB, page 8 :

Read the talk on page 8 again and find the following :

- 1 a sentence which acts as an introduction.  
.....
- 2 a sentence which tells you what the talk is going to be about .  
.....
- 3 a way to end the talk.  
.....

6 /SB, page 11 :

Work in pairs and discuss these questions.

- 1- in what ways are web pages different to pages in books or magazines?  
.....  
.....
- 2- are some web pages easier to use than others? Why/ why not?  
.....
- 3- What do you think makes a good website?  
.....

**COMPREHENSION TEST**

1. There are many purposes for using the Internet in the classroom by teachers. Write down two of these purposes.

.....  
.....

2. Write down the sentence which indicates that it is necessary for the teacher to be a part of the group of learning.

.....

3. There are two benefits of exchanging emails in education. Write down these two benefits.

.....

4. Students can communicate with other schools by many ways. Mention two of them

.....

5. Find a word in the fourth paragraph which means ‘ a regularly updated personal website or web page usually written in an informal style’

.....

6. What does the underlined phrase ‘ social media ‘ mean?

.....

7. What do the underlined pronouns refer to?

.....

8. Quote the sentence which shows the various benefits of using tablets.

.....

.....

**Critical thinking :**

1. The writer states that digital information can be used to educate people .Explain this statement , suggesting three ways in which people can benefit from this kind of technology.

.....

.....

.....

2. Young people love learning. Think of this statement and , in two sentences , write down your point of view.

.....

.....

.....

TEACHER OF ENGLISH  
JAMAL SAH  
0777376260

## The Internet of Things

**A: What is the 'Internet of Things'?** ما هو انترنت الاشياء؟

Everyone knows that the Internet connects people, but now it does more than that – it connects objects, too. These days, computers often communicate with each other; for example, your TV automatically downloads your favourite TV show, or your 'sat nav' system tells you where you are. This is known as the 'Internet of Things', and there's a lot more to come.

كلنا يعلم أن الانترنت يربط الناس يربط الناس بعضهم ببعض, لكن الآن يقوم بأكثر من ذلك – انه يربط الأشياء أيضا . هذه الأيام , الحواسيب على الأغلب تتواصل مع بعضها البعض , مثلا , تلفازك يقوم أليا بتحميل العرض التلفازي المفضل لك لعرضه , أو يقوم نظام الملاحة حسب الأقمار الصناعية بإخبارك أين أنت . وهذا ما يعرف بـ " انترنت الأشياء" و هناك أكثر من ذلك.

**B: An easy life!** حياة سهلة !

In just a few years' time, experts say that billions of machines will be connected to each other and to the Internet. As a consequence, computers will increasingly run our lives for us. For example, your fridge will know when you need more milk and add it to your online shopping list; your windows will close if it is likely to rain; your watch will record your heart rate and email your doctor; and your sofa will tell you when you need to stand up and get some exercise!

خلال سنوات قليلة , يقول الخبراء أن مليارات الآلات سترتبط مع بعضها البعض و بالانترنت . كنتيجة لذلك , ستقوم الحواسيب بشكل متزايد بإدارة حياتنا .مثلا , تلاجتك ستعرف متى ستحتاج حليب أكثر و إضافته إلى قائمة التسوق خاصتك عبر الانترنت , نوافذك إذا كان هناك احتمال لسقوط المطر , ساعتك ستسجل معدل نبضات قلبك و إرسال ليميل إلى طبيبك الخاص , و أريكتك متى تحتاج للوقوف و القيام ببعض التمارين

**C: A frightening future** مستقبل مخيف

Many people are excited about the 'Internet of Things'. For them, a dream is coming true. They say that our lives will be easier and more comfortable. However, others are not so sure. They want to keep control of their own lives and their own things. In addition, they wonder what would happen if criminals managed to access their passwords and security settings. The dream could easily become a nightmare!

الكثير من الناس يستمتعون بانترنت الأشياء . بالنسبة لهم , الحلم أصبح حقيقة . يقولون أن حياتنا ستصبح أسهل و أكثر راحة. على أي حال , الآخرون ليسوا متأكدين تماما . يريدون أن يبقوا مسيطرين على حياتهم و أشياءهم الخاصة. إضافة إلى ذلك , يتساءلون ماذا من الممكن أن يحصل في حال تمكن المجرمون من الوصول إلى كلماتهم السرية و إعدادات الحماية الخاصة بهم . الحلم من السهل أن يصبح كابوسا.

تمارين الكتاب

8 / WB, page 8 :

Think of two examples of how technology can keep us fit.

.....  
.....  
.....

9 / WB, page 8 :

Read the article below quickly, and circle the correct words.

- 1. The article is about how the Internet *has developed / is developing*.
- 2. The writer *says what he thinks / gives different opinions*.

11 / WB, page 8 :

Read the article once more, then answer the questions.

- 1. What does the 'Internet of Things' mean? Give an example from the text.  
.....
- 2. Find a word in the first paragraph which has the same meaning as 'speak to'.  
.....
- 3. How will the 'Internet of Things' help you to keep fit, according to the text?  
.....
- 4 What does the word 'others' in bold in the third paragraph refer to?  
.....
- 5 According to the text, why are some people excited about the future? Why are others worried? .....
- 6 In your opinion, is the 'Internet of Things' exciting or worrying? Why?  
.....  
.....

COMPREHENSION TEST

- 1. Quote the sentence which indicates that computers will run our lives?  
.....
- 2. According to the text, your future fridge can do two things. Write them down.  
.....  
.....
- 3. Watches in the future can help people in two ways. write down these two ways.  
.....
- 4. Write down the sentences which indicates that a lot of people are satisfied with the " internet of things"  
.....  
.....
- 5. Criminals can commit two crimes by using the "internet of things. Write them down.  
.....
- 6. What do the underlined words ( pronouns) refer to ?  
.....
- 7. Find a phrase in the last paragraph which means 'controls available on computer programs which let you protect your computer from viruses'  
.....

**8. Read the quotation. Do you agree with it? Why / Why not?**  
**“Technology is just a tool. In terms of getting the kids working together and motivating them, the teacher is the most important.” Bill Gates (1955 CE)**

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

**Critical thinking :**

**1. The writer states that it is recommended to use technology wisely. Explain this statement, suggesting three ways in which we can use it perfectly.**

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

**2. Technology is a way to keep our bodies fit. Think of this statement and , in two sentences , write down your point of view.**

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

TEACHER OF ENGLISH  
JAMAL SAH  
0777376260

# UNIT ONE

## Information technology

### MODEL ANSWERS

#### INITIAL TEST

Page 4, exercise 1

1. rugby
2. rink
3. confident
4. poet
5. skates
6. Paper

Page 4, exercise 2

1. take place
2. wake up
3. settle down
4. meet up
5. look around
6. get started

Page 4, exercise 3

1. that she had some questions for her.
2. that he had lived in Amman for six years.
3. that she had bought all the ingredients for a chocolate cake the day before.
4. that he had really enjoyed the book that he had finished that morning
5. that his favourite subject that year was Chemistry

Page 5, exercise 4

1. fossil fuels
2. wind
3. water
4. wood
5. waves
6. solar energy

Page 5, exercise 5

1. lawyer
2. helmet
3. grateful
4. likely
5. headlines
6. Energy

Page 5, exercise 6

1. in; have
2. repaired; working
3. started; must
4. were written; typed

Page 5, exercise 7

1. melt
2. mix
3. slice
4. boil
5. fry
6. Sprinkle; season
7. roast



5 / SB, page 7 :

- 1 Today, most people use their mobile phones every day. (lines 26–27)
- 2 When you are using a computer ... (line 1)
- 3 Scientists have also developed glasses that ... (line 30)
- 4 People have been using types of computers for thousands of years. (lines 2–4)
- 5 One such model was so large that it needed a room ... (lines 9–10)
- 6 In the 1940s, technology had developed enough ... (line 7)
- 7 ... how our homes are heated. (line 35)
- 8 A metal machine was found ... (line 4)
- 9 What will happen in the future? (line 28)
- 10 Life in the future is going to see further changes in computer technology. (lines 32–33)

6 / SB, page 7 :

- 1- have been using
- 2- were invented
- 3- bought
- 4- was produced
- 5- had sold
- 6- are sold
- 7- is estimated
- 8- will expand
- 9- are buying
- 10- will be

4 / SB, page 10 :

2. He said that if they shared information on social media with their friends, it might be accessed by other people, too.
3. He said that on social media, they should only connect to people they know well.
4. He said that later they would give the listeners information about websites where they could find more advice on Internet safety.

**5 / SB, page 10 :**

1. Farida said that their teacher had told them about the dangers of the Internet the day before. She said that she had to write an essay about it that night. She thought she was going to need some help.
2. Saleem said that they had to give a talk about the advantages and disadvantages of the Internet the following week, so he would need to prepare it that week.

**4 / WB, page 7 :**

1. said 2. needed 3. was 4. has been 5. have 6. carry 7. wear 8. will attach

**5 / WB, page 7 :**

1. use 2. play 3. to get; to buy 4. going to rain 5. come; 'm staying 6. been doing; will be 7. had; wouldn't 8. was writing; switched

**6 / WB, page 7 :**

1. Issa's phone might be broken.
2. My missing laptop has been found.
3. I had my computer fixed.
4. You don't have to switch off the screen.
5. You mustn't touch this machine.
6. If I were you, I would send a text message.
7. If you press that button, the picture moves.
8. Mohammad had checked his emails before he started work.



**4 / SB, page 9 :**

share ideas	to give your idea to another person or a group
compare ideas	where two or more people consider how their ideas are similar or different
create a web site	to construct a website that currently does not exist
contribute to a web site	offer your writing and work to the website
research information	to use a variety of sources to find the information you need
present information	to give the results of your research in a presentation
monitor what is happening	you know what is happening and you are following the developments
find out what is happening	you don't know what is happening and you want to discover it
give a talk to people	you have prepared a speech and you are giving this speech to a group of people who are expecting it
talk to people	an informal discussion
show photos	you show people photos that you have in person
send photos	you send photos to someone over the Internet or by post

**5 / SB, page 9 :**

1. My teacher says I must learn these words.
2. In our English lessons, I can use a dictionary.
3. I use technology to help me to do my homework.
4. Next year, I will start to learn the violin.
5. If I had more time, I would learn another language.
6. If I use a computer, I learn a lot of useful information.
7. If the teacher gives us homework today, I will do it before I watch TV.

**3 / SB, page 10 :**

1. about 2. with 3. on 4. out 5. in

1 / WB, page 6 :

2- Computer chip 3- floppy disk 4- PC 5- calculation 6- World Wide Web

2 / WB, page 6 :

1- programs 2- mouse 3- decade 4- tablet 5- invented

3 / WB, page 6 :

1- smartphone 2- program 3- calculations 4- model 5- laptop

7 / WB, page 7 :

1. The TV it's a product that is man-made. 2. Smartphone has internet access 3. A calculator  
4. A tablet because it is used as a PC 5. No, I use a memory card.

### THE HISTORY OF COMPUTERS

3 / SB, page 6 :

It could be more than 2.000 years old

4 / SB, page 6 :

1. It was found on the seabed in Greece.
2. A very large room was needed to keep the computers in; the room was 167 square metres.
3. the computer chip, the first computer game, the computer mouse, the floppy disk, the first personal computer
4. Suggested answer: I think that computer technology will develop further in the future to the point that it will 'know' how to address our every need. We will not have to think about everyday tasks like shopping and cleaning because technology will take care of them. I disagree with the article because I do not think that all aspects of our daily lives will rely on a computer program, because this would result in too many problems if the computers crashed.
5. Suggested answer: I agree that computers have enabled us to do many great things, but becoming overly reliant on technology is not a positive aspect of this development.
6. I think a tablet is the most useful because it's small and light; you can take it out with you and you can use it for different activities, e.g. surfing the net, listening to music, reading a book, watching a film, keeping up-to-date with social media, etc.
7. The advantages are that they are light, portable and convenient. The disadvantages are that people use them all the time and then don't speak to people face to face.
8. It would take longer to find information; we wouldn't be able to send documents quickly to another person; we wouldn't keep in touch with friends and family so easily, etc.

### COMPREHENSION TEST

1. The British scientist Tim Betters Lee.
2. Watches and glasses.
3. the first generation of modern computers and the first computer program.
4. One such model was so large it needed a room that was 167 square metres to put it in.
5. It took 25 minutes to complete one calculation.
6. to have trust or confidence in something or someone
7. floppy disk
8. it : a computer / their : most people / which : watches

Critical thinking :

1. People use mobile phones every day for many purposes such as calling, internet taking photos, watching films and listening to music.
2. I think that we rely more on computer technology . For example, computers have enabled us to do many great things, but becoming overly reliant on technology is not a positive aspect of this development.

## using technology in class

1 /SB, page 8 :

1. Digital information can be used to educate people in a variety of ways. For example, you can listen to lectures online, or use apps on a tablet to learn languages. You can also use internet to find information on what you are studying
2. I don't think that they will ever completely replace books because, for many people, reading is very personal experience that doesn't feel the same when it is done on computer.

3 / SB, page 9 :

2. email exchange
3. whiteboard
4. social media
5. blog

6 /SB, page 8 :

- 1- Young people love learning, but they like learning even more if they are presented with information in an interesting and challenging way.
- 2- Today, I am going to give a talk about how you can use technology in Jordanian classrooms.
- 3- Thank you for listening. Does anyone have any questions?

6 /SB, page 11 :

- 1- web pages give links at other web pages , both on the same site or on different ones. They are interactive. They often have adverts on them . they often allow you to contact to author.
- 2- yes, some are easier to navigate round than others.
- 3- students could discuss layout, ease of use, clear route through the site. Etc...

## COMPREHENSION TEST

1. to show educational programmes - to play educational games
2. The teacher must be part of the group, too, to monitor what is happening.
3. Students can then share information and help each other with tasks.
4. They can exchange emails and talk to people over the computer using cameras.
5. blog
6. social interaction between people and communities on websites or blogs.
7. they : young people / their : teachers / who : students / them : computers.
8. Therefore, students can use the tablets to do tasks such as showing photographs, researching information, recording interviews and creating diagrams.

Critical thinking :

1. Digital information can be used to educate people in a variety of ways. For example, you can listen to podcasts and lectures online, or use apps on a tablet to learn languages. You can also use the Internet to find information on what you are studying.
2. I think that young people love learning. For example , large proportion of young people are students so we should encourage them to keep going by introducing advance technology in our schools and get rid of old methods .

## The Internet of Things

8 / WB, page 8 :

Smartphone apps can be used to monitor how much exercise you do. Apps can track your workout time, heart rate and how many calories you burn.

Interactive video games can also be used to help us to keep fit. They are used indoors and provide a healthy, active alternative to watching television.

9 / WB, page 8

1. is developing 2. gives different opinions

11 / WB, page 8 :

1. It means the connections between different computers. Examples from the text are TV downloads and sat nav.
2. communicate
3. The sofa will tell you when to get some exercise.
4. other people with a different opinion
5. Some people are excited because they think their lives will be made easier and more comfortable. Others are worried because they want to keep control of their own lives and their own things.
6. In my opinion, it is exciting because everything will be easier and more comfortable .

### COMPREHENSION TEST

1. As a consequence, computers will increasingly run our lives for us.
2. Your fridge will know when you need more milk and add it to your online shopping list.
3. Your watch will record your heart rate and email your doctor.
4. Many people are excited about the 'Internet of Things'.
5. Criminals managed to access their passwords and security settings.
6. it : the Internet / them : many people / their : others ' other people '
7. security settings
8. I agree with this quotation because Bill Gates refers to technology as a 'tool' in this quotation because he is emphasising that it is a useful and effective way of involving children. However, in terms of actually making sure children learn, or of ensuring children's social development, teachers cannot be replaced. They are the most important contributors to a person's education, but of course they can use technology to help!

Critical thinking :

1. We can use technology wisely in different ways . For example, we can depend more on our mental skills and raise awareness among people about how to use technology. Also, we can enhance the activities which depend on human not technology .
2. I think that technology is a way to keep our bodies fit. For example , smartphone apps can be used to monitor how much exercise we need to do and how many calories we burn . Also, interactive video games can be used to help us to keep fit. They are used indoors and provide a healthy, active alternative to watching television.

## UNIT TWO A healthy life

### Grammar

#### BE USED TO / USED TO

##### 1. Be used to : ( am / is / are /was / were used to )

We use **be used to** (+ noun, pronoun or verb in the **-ing** form) to describe things that are familiar or customary.

تستخدم لوصف القيام بالأشياء الاعتيادية أو المألوفة والتي ما زلنا نقوم بها لغاية الآن بحيث يتبعها اسم غالبا ما يكون اسم مصدر أو ضمير مثل **it**  
**be used to** (+ noun, pronoun or verb in the **-ing** form)

- *We've lived in the city a long time, so we're used to the traffic.*
- *I didn't like getting up early, but I'm used to it now.*
- *She's lived in the UK for a year. She's used to speaking English now.*

##### 2. Used to : ( didn't use to / did .....use to ?/ used to )

We use **used to** (+ infinitive) to describe past habits or past states that have now changed.

تستخدم لوصف ما كنا معتادين على فعله في الماضي , أما الآن فقد توقفنا عن القيام به بحيث يتبعها فعل مجرد

**Used to** +( infinitive )

- *My mother used to buy my clothes, but now I choose my own.*
- *She used to be a teacher, but now she's retired.*
- *I used to like cartoon films when I was younger. These days I prefer action films.*

\* إذا جاء بعد **to** أو بعد الفراغ اسم عادي أو ضمير أو اسم مصدر نختار **be used to**  
\* إذا جاء بعد **to** أو بعد الفراغ فعل نختار **used to**

- I ..... wearing jeans.
- I .....wear jeans .

#### تمارين الكتاب

6 / SB, page 15 :

Choose the correct option in each sentence.

1. I **didn't use to** / **am used to** understand English, but now I do.
2. My cousin has lived in Lebanon for a year. He says he **is used to** / **didn't use to** living there now.
3. My family and I **are used to** / **used to** go camping once a month, but we stopped doing that when we moved to the city.
4. Joining a gym can be very tiring at first if you **used to** / **aren't used to** doing much exercise.
5. When I was young, I **used to** / **am used to** go fishing with my dad every weekend. Now I don't, unfortunately!

3 / WB, page 11 :

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the phrases in the box. Two phrases are needed twice. The first one is done for you.

**be used to, use to, not be used to, used to**

1. We needed warm clothes when we went to London. We **weren't used to** the cold weather.
2. My grandparents didn't ..... send emails when they were my age.
3. Rashed ..... go swimming every morning, but now he doesn't.
4. We always go to the market across the street, so we ..... eating fresh vegetables.
5. Please slow down. I ..... walking so fast!
6. When you were younger, did you .....play in the park?

4 / WB, page 11 :

Choose the correct form of the verbs below. The first one is done for you.

1. I **used to / am used to** go shopping in the local supermarket, but it closed two years ago, so now I have to drive into town to shop.
2. There **didn't use to / wasn't used to** be so much pollution, but these days it is a global problem.
3. I think television **used to / is used to** be better than it is now. Most of the programmes these days are just reality TV.
4. Most Jordanians **are used to / used to** the hot weather that we have in summer.
5. There **was used to / used to** be a lot more wild animals in the past, but they are becoming rare nowadays.
6. Salma has been practising the oud really hard and she **is now used to / now used to** playing it.

5 / WB, page 12 :

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. The first one is done for you.

1. When I was a student, I **used to work (work)** very hard. I **used to get up (get up)** very early and study alone before my lectures, attend lectures all day, and then come home to study some more!
2. Are you..... **(live)** in Jordan yet? You've only been here for two months.
3. When I was a child, my grandmother.....**(make)** cakes for us all the time, and I liked helping her a lot.
4. My grandfather retired a month ago. He isn't..... **(have)** nothing to do all day. He says he needs a project to concentrate on.
5. I just got glasses this week, and I'm not.....**(wear)** them yet, so I'm still having difficulty.

**Rewrite the following sentence:**

1. It is normal for me now to get up early to study.  
I am used .....
2. Fares didn't use to come early , but now he does.  
Fares.....
3. I wasn't used to watching TV every morning , but now I often do .  
I .....
4. Joory doesn't use to wake up early.  
Joory .....

## THE PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS

### FORM .....

- Affirmative sentences:.....
- Sub ( I , We ,They, You He, She, It) + had +been + base verb+ ing + complementary.
- She (call)..... her mother for two hours when I came.
- Negative sentences:.....
- Sub (I, We, They, You He, She, It) + hadn't +been + base verb +ing + complementary.
- I (not/ wait ).....for a long time when he met me.
- Questions:.....
- Had+ sub (I, We, They, You He, She, It) + been+ base verb +ing + complementary?
- You looked tired yesterday . .....you ( work ) ..... all the time ?

### KEY WORDS.....

for, since, all, how long , again , because .

### USES .....

- talk about actions or situations that were happening up to a specific moment in the past. when another action started.

التحدث عن أفعال أو مواقف كانت مستمرة حتى وقت محدد في الماضي عندما بدأ فعل أو حدث آخر.

- Ali .....( think ) about his friend when he received a text from him.
- By the time the bus arrived, we ..... (wait ) for an hour.

\* مؤشرات المضارع التام المستمر تستخدم في الماضي التام المستمر بشرط أن تكون الجملة من جزأين ( تتكون من فعلين ) احدهما ماضيا بسيطا.

- \* You were tired yesterday because you ..... ( work ) all the time.

\* إذا كان الفعل المستخدم في الجملة من الأفعال التي لا تقبل استمرارية مثل :

( be , see, know , want , need , own , run out , break , graduate , start , finish , wound , cut ....etc)

يكون الحل ماضي تام حتى لو احتوت الجملة على مؤشر يفيد الاستمرارية .

- \* Sara didn't recognize her friend Farah .She ..... (not / see ) her for five years.

### تمارين الكتاب

5 / SB, page 19 :

Complete the sentences, using the Past Perfect Continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

1. A: When I saw you yesterday, you looked really tired.

B: Yes, I **had been running** for half an hour. (run)

2. My mother lost her purse yesterday. She..... in the market; she must have put it down somewhere and left it there. (shop)

3. I made my mother a cup of tea. She was hot and tired; She ..... all afternoon for a special family dinner. (cook)

Complete the sentences by choosing the correct verb forms.

Hind (1) **has / had** been working very hard for several weeks before she did her final exams. When the results were published, she was delighted to learn that she (2) **has / had** passed. She (3) **has / had** done extremely well. She (4) **phoned / had phoned** her parents from the college. They (5) **were / had been** waiting for her call all morning. When she arrived home an hour later, there was a surprise for her. For several weeks, her parents (6) **planned / had been planning** a special weekend away to the Jerash Festival. They (7) **have / had** managed to make it a surprise for Hind, even though they (8) **were / had been** using the family computer to make all the arrangements! Hind was delighted. She (9) **has / had** been talking about the Jerash Festival for months; and now the whole family was going! It was a wonderful graduation present.

## Vocabulary

The word (s)	English Meaning	Arabic Meaning
acupuncture	a system of complementary medicine in which fine needles are inserted in the skin at specific points	الوخز بالإبر
ailment	Illness	مرض / وعكة صحية
allergy	a reaction of the immune system when it is sensitive to something; this reaction comes in the form of sneezing, itchy eyes or a skin rash	حساسية
homoeopathy	a system of complementary medicine in which illnesses are treated by minute doses of herbs and other natural substances	الطب البديل
arthritis	a disease causing painful inflammation and stiffness of the joints	التهاب المفاصل
immunisation	the process by which an individual's immune system becomes protected against an illness	اكتساب المناعة
malaria	a dangerous disease transmitted by mosquitoes	ملاريا
migraine	a very bad headache which often comes with a feeling of sickness and problems with vision	شقيقة / صداع
viable	effective and able to be successful	قابل للحياة
herbal remedy	an extract or mixture of a plant used to prevent, alleviate, or cure disease	التداوي بالأعشاب
alien	Strange	غريب
conventional	having been used for a long time and is considered usual	تقليدي / عادي
sceptical	Suspicious	متشكك
Career	s job undertaken for a significant period of a persons' life and with opportunities for progress	وظيفة
complementary medicine	medical treatment which provides an alternative to scientific medical practices	طب تكميلي / بديل
infant mortality	death, especially on a large scale (e.g. infant mortality); the rate of deaths that occur (mortality rate).	وفيات الاطفال
antibody	a substance produced by the body to fight disease	الجسم المضاد
option	something that is or maybe chosen	خيار

<b>practitioner</b>	<b>someone who is qualified or registered to practise a particular occupation or profession</b>	من يمارس مهنة أو مهارة
<b>setback</b>	<b>a problem that delays or stops progress, or makes a situation worse.</b>	فشل / إخفاق
<b>raise</b>	<b>a question to bring up a problem or cast doubt on something.</b>	يرفع / يربي / يسأل
<b>optimistic</b>	<b>believing that good things will happen in the future.</b>	متفائل
<b>commitment</b>	<b>a promise to do something or to behave in a particular way.</b>	التزام
<b>healthcare</b>	<b>the prevention or treatment of illness by doctors, dentists, psychologists, etc.</b>	الرعاية الصحية
<b>life expectancy</b>	<b>the length of time that a person or animal is expected to live.</b>	متوسط العمر المتوقع
<b>decline</b>	<b>to decrease in quantity or importance.</b>	يتناقص
<b>obese</b>	<b>extremely fat, in a way that is dangerous to your health.</b>	السمنة المفرطة
<b>strenuous</b>	<b>using or needing a lot of effort.</b>	مجهد / متعب
<b>reputation</b>	<b>the common opinion that people have about someone or something</b>	سُمعة
<b>dental</b>	<b>relating to teeth</b>	سني
<b>sanitation</b>	<b>the systems which supply water and deal with human waste</b>	الصرف الصحي
<b>workforce</b>	<b>the people who are able to work</b>	قوى عاملة

### Colour Idioms

<b>feel blue</b>	<b>to feel sad</b>	يشعر بالحزن
<b>see red</b>	<b>to get angry</b>	يغضب
<b>white elephant</b>	<b>something that has cost a lot of money but has no useful purpose./ a useless possession</b>	مكلف بدون فائدة
<b>have/get the green light</b>	<b>to have or give permission to go ahead with something or for something to happen.</b>	يسمح / ياذن / يوافق
<b>red-handed</b>	<b>in the act of doing something wrong</b>	يقوم بعمل خاطئ / متلبس بالجرم
<b>out of the blue</b>	<b>unexpectedly / apparently from nowhere</b>	بشكل مفاجئ

### Phrasal Verbs

<b>cope with</b>	<b>to deal successfully with, or handle a situation.</b>	يتعامل مع
<b>bounce back</b>	<b>to start to be successful again after a difficult time.</b>	النهوض بعد الفشل
<b>focus on</b>	<b>to direct your attention or effort at something specific.</b>	يركز على

4 / SB, page 19 :

- What do the following *colour* idioms in brackets mean?

1. Have you heard the good news? We've got the green light to go ahead with our project! **(the green light)** .....
2. Luckily, the police arrived and the thief was caught red-handed. **(red-handed)** .....
3. I was shocked when I heard the news. It came completely out of the blue. **(out of the blue)**.....
4. Nobody goes to the new private sports club. The building is a white elephant. **(a white elephant)** .....

1 / WB, page 11 :

Match the phrases in the table with the correct meanings. One word is not needed. The first one is done for you.

**acupuncture, homoeopathy, ailment, arthritis, immunisation, malaria, allergies, migraine**

1. a serious illness that is spread by mosquitoes. ***malaria***
2. a disease that causes pain and swelling in joints. ....
3. an illness or disease which is not very serious. ....
4. giving a drug to protect against illness. ....
5. an extremely bad headache. ....
6. a form of complementary medicine which uses thin needles. ....
7. conditions that make you ill when you eat, touch or breathe a particular thing. ....

2 / WB, page 11 :

Complete the sentences with words from exercise 1. The first one is done for you.

1. My grandfather has **arthritis** in his fingers, so he sometimes finds it difficult to write.
2. .... to nuts and milk are becoming more common.
3. Many serious diseases can be prevented by..... , which helps the body to build antibodies.
4. Headaches and colds are common .....s, especially in winter.
5. If you have a ..... , the best thing to do is take some medicine and rest somewhere quiet.

6 / WB, page 12 :

Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

**viable, alien, conventional, sceptical, complementary**

1. I don't really believe that story – I'm very .....
2. Doctors often treat infections with antibiotics; that is the..... approach.
3. Medicines that are not the normal, traditionally accepted treatments are known as .  
.....
4. Another way of saying that something could be successful is to say it is.....
5. If something seems very strange, we sometimes say it is.....

7 / WB, page 12 :

Sentences 1–4 contain incorrect information. Correct them, using the phrases in the box. One phrase is not needed. The first one is done for you.

**conventional medicine / produce antibodies, children and teenagers,  
better and healthier lifestyle choices, suffer from health problems,  
relax / get some exercise**

1. A good way to cope with stress is to work extra hard.  
*No, it isn't. You should try to relax and get some exercise.*
2. Complementary medicine can be used to immunise people.  
*No, it can't. You can immunise yourself using.....*
3. Optimistic people make bad lifestyle choices.  
*No, they don't. They make.....*
4. Seeing red has positive effects on your health.  
*No, it doesn't . You often .....*

TEACHER OF ENGLISH  
JAMAL SAH  
0777376260

## Complementary medicine: is it really a solution?

### KEY WORDS

acupuncture	a system of complementary medicine in which fine needles are inserted in the skin at specific points	الوخز بالإبر
Ailment	Illness	مرض / وعكة صحية
Allergy	a reaction of the immune system when it is sensitive to something; this reaction comes in the form of sneezing, itchy eyes or a skin rash	حساسية
homoeopathy	a system of complementary medicine in which illnesses are treated by minute doses of herbs and other natural substances	الطب البديل
arthritis	a disease causing painful inflammation and stiffness of the joints	التهاب المفاصل
immunisation	the process by which an individual's immune system becomes protected against an illness	اكتساب المناعة
Malaria	a dangerous disease transmitted by mosquitoes	ملاريا
migraine	a very bad headache which often comes with a feeling of sickness and problems with vision	شقيقة / صداع
herbal remedy	an extract or mixture of a plant used to prevent, alleviate, or cure disease	التداوي بالإعشاب
complementary medicine	medical treatment which provides an alternative to scientific medical practices	طب تكميلي / بديل

Most doctors used to be sceptical about the validity of homoeopathy, acupuncture and other forms of complementary medicine. If patients wanted to receive this kind of nonconventional treatment, they used to have to consult a private practitioner who was likely not to have a medical degree. However, in recent years, the perception of this type of treatment has changed. These days, many family doctors study complementary medicine alongside conventional treatments, and many complementary medicine consultants also have medical degrees.

معظم الأطباء اعتادوا أن يكونوا متشككين حيال فعالية الطب البديل، الوخز بالإبر و الإشكال الأخرى من الطب التكميلي. إذا أراد المرضى تلقي هذا النوع من العلاج غير التقليدي، كان عليهم استشارة ممارس خاص و الذي كان غالبا لا يحمل شهادة طبية. على أي حال، في السنوات الأخيرة، فإن مفهوم هذا النوع من المعالجة قد تغير. هذه الأيام، العديد من أطباء الأسرة يدرسون الطب التكميلي جنبا إلى جنب مع العلاج التقليدي و العديد من استشاريي الطب التكميلي حاصلين على شهادات طبية كذلك.

Whereas critics used to say that there was no scientific evidence that non-conventional treatments actually worked, now it is more common for medical experts to recognise that conventional medicine may not always be the only way to treat an ailment. At a surgery in London, 70 per cent of patients who were offered the choice between a herbal or a conventional medicine for common complaints such as insomnia, arthritis and migraines chose the herbal remedy. Fifty per cent of patients then said that the treatment helped. One doctor said, "I now consider homoeopathy to be a viable option for many different conditions, including anxiety, depression and certain allergies. It provides another option when conventional medicine does not address the problem adequately."

بينما المنتقدون كانوا يقولون بأنه لم يكن يوجد دليل علمي بان العلاج غير التقليدي يعمل , ألآن الخبراء الطبيون يميلون إلى أن يدركوا أن الطب التقليدي قد لا يكون دائما هو الطريقة الوحيدة لعلاج المرض . في إحدى العيادات في لندن , 70 بالمائة من المرضى عرض عليهم الاختيار بين طب الأعشاب و الطب التقليدي لعلاج الأمراض الشائعة مثل الأرق , التهاب المفاصل و الشقيقة اختاروا المداواة بالأعشاب. خمسون بالمائة منهم قالوا بان العلاج كان فعالا . احد الأطباء قال " إنا ألآن اعتبر الطب البديل خيارا متوفرا للكثير من الحالات بما فيها القلق, الإحباط و أنواع معينة من الحساسية. انه يقدم خيارا أخر عندما لا يحل الطب التقليدي المشكلة بشكل كاف".

However, complementary medicine cannot be used for all medical treatments. It can never substitute for immunisations as it will not produce the antibodies needed to protect against childhood diseases. It also cannot be used to protect against malaria. مع ذلك , الطب التكميلي لا يمكن استخدامه في كل المعالجات الطبية . لا يمكنه أن يكون بديلا للتطعيم لأنه لا ينتج المضادات الحيوية اللازمة ضد أمراض الطفولة. أيضا لا يمكن استخدامه للوقاية من مرض الملاريا.

One doctor said, "I will always turn to conventional medical treatment first to ensure that no underlying condition is missed. However, the idea of complementary treatments is no longer an alien concept. In my opinion, it should work alongside modern medicine, and not against it."

احد الأطباء قال " سألجأ دائما إلى الطب التقليدي. لا للتأكد من انه لا حالة مهمة تم إغفالها . على أي حال, فكرة الطب التكميلي لم تعد فكرة غريبة . برأيي, يجب أن تطبق جنباً إلى جنب مع الطب الحديث و ليس ضده.

4 / SB, page 15 :

Listen to and read the article again, and decide if these sentences are true or false. Correct the false sentences.

1. Doctors and patients didn't use to be convinced that complementary forms of medicine work. ....
2. Nowadays, many doctors study complementary forms of treatment. ....
3. At the surgery mentioned in the article, the majority of patients found that the herbal remedy did not help them. ....
4. Complementary medicine can work as a replacement for immunisations or to treat malaria. ....

4 / SB, page 15 :

Answer the following questions about the article.

1 The article suggests that people's perception of complementary medicine has changed over time. Why do you think this is the case?

.....  
.....

2 "Complementary treatments ... should work alongside modern medicine, not against it." Explain this statement in two sentences, justifying your answer with examples from the article.

.....  
.....

### COMPREHENSION TEST

1. There are many forms of complementary medicine. Write down two of them.

.....  
.....

2. Write down the sentence which indicates that many doctors study complementary forms of treatment.

.....  
.....

3. Non-conventional medicine cannot work as a replacement for some treatments. Write down two of them.

.....  
.....

4. Doctors always turn to conventional treatment first. Why do they do that?

.....  
.....

5. Quote the sentence which indicates that people didn't use to study complementary medicine formally.

.....  
.....

6. Find a word in the text which means “illness”.

.....  
7. What does the underlined word in the second paragraph “arthritis” mean?

.....  
8. What do the underlined words ( pronouns ) refer to ?

.....  
**Critical Thinking :**

**1. Some people believe that homoeopathy is not a valid alternative to conventional Medicine and it can't be effective . Explain this statement , suggesting three bad effects for this kind of treatment.**

.....  
.....  
.....

**2. Complementary medicine can't replace modern medicine. Think of this statement, and in two sentences, write down your point of view.**

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

TEACHER OF ENGLISH  
JAMAL SAH  
0777376260

## Are happier people healthier – and, if so, why?

### KEY WORDS

Setback	a problem that delays or stops progress, or makes a situation worse.	فشل / إخفاق
Raise	a question to bring up a problem or cast doubt on something.	يرفع / يربي / يسال
optimistic	believing that good things will happen in the future.	متفائل

It's normal to **feel a bit blue** from time to time. However, studies show that negative emotions can harm the body.

من الطبيعي أن تشعر بالكآبة / التوتر من حين إلى آخر. مع ذلك , الدراسات تبين أن العواطف السلبية يمكن أن تضر الجسم .

Anger can also have harmful effects on health. When you **see red**, your blood pressure is raised and you can suffer from headaches, sleep problems and digestive problems. However, what about positive feelings and attitudes? Until recently, scientists had not investigated whether there is a link between positive feelings and good health.

الغضب يمكن أيضا أن يكون له اثار ضارة على الصحة . عندما تغضب , ضغط دمك يرتفع و يمكن أن تعاني من صداع , مشاكل في النوم و مشاكل في الهضم . على أي حال , ماذا عن المشاعر و التوجهات الايجابية ؟ حتى وقت قريب , لم يتحقق العلماء فيما إذا كان هناك صلة بين المشاعر الايجابية و الصحة الجيدة .

Then, in a study that had followed more than 6,000 men and women aged 25 to 74 for 20 years, researchers found that positivity reduced the risk of heart disease. Other factors influencing health included a supportive network of family and friends, and an optimistic outlook on life.

ثم , و في دراسة كانت قد تابعت أكثر من 6000 رجل و امرأة أعمارهم من 25 إلى 74 عاما و لمدة 20 عاما , وجد الباحثون أن الايجابية خفضت خطر أمراض القلب . عوامل أخرى تؤثر في الصحة شملت وجود شبكة داعمة من العائلة و الأصدقاء و نظرة متفائلة للحياة .

The research showed that children who were more able to stay focused on a task, and **who** had a more positive attitude to life at age seven, were usually in better health 30 years later.

البحث اظهر ان الاطفال الذين كانوا اكثر قدرة على البقاء مركزين على الواجب , الذين لديهم توجه ايجابي اكثر نحو الحياة في سن السابعة , كانوا بصحة افضل بعد 30 عاما .

The study has been controversial. Some health professionals believe that bad lifestyle choices, such as smoking or lack of exercise, are the reason for heart disease and other illnesses, and not an individual's attitude. The researchers, while agreeing, raise the question: why are people making bad lifestyle decisions? Do more optimistic people make better and healthier lifestyle choices?

الدراسة كانت مثار جدل. بعض أخصائيي الصحة يعتقدون أن خيارات الحياة السيئة , مثل التدخين أو قلة التمارين , هي السبب لأمراض القلب و لأمراض أخرى , و ليس السبب هو توجه الفرد . الباحثون , يوافقون مع طرح سؤال: لماذا يتبع الناس أساليب حياة سيئة ؟ هل يقوم الناس الأكثر تفاؤلا باتخاذ خيارات حياتية أفضل و أكثر صحة ؟

The researchers appreciate that not everyone's personal circumstances and environment make it possible to live without worry. However, they believe that if we teach children to develop positive thinking, and start to be successful again after a difficult time after a setback, these qualities will improve their overall health in the future.

يقدر الباحثون انه ليست ظروف الفرد الشخصية و بيئته ما يجعلانه يعيش بدون قلق. على أي حال , يعتقدون بأننا إذا علمنا الأطفال أن يطوروا التفكير الايجابي , وان يستعيدوا قواهم بعد كل إخفاق , فان هذه الخصائص ستحسن كامل صحتهم في المستقبل .

### تمارين الكتاب

1/ SB, page 16 :

Work in small groups. Discuss these questions and share your ideas.

1. Do you ever feel yourself getting angry? What kind of things can make you angry?

.....  
 .....

2. Do you think that feeling angry is bad for you?

.....

2 / SB, page 16 :

In pairs, discuss the question in the title of the article. What are your opinions? Read the article and consider your opinion again.

.....  
 .....

3/ SB, page 16 :

Read the article again and answer the questions.

1. What are the possible effects of anger and stress on someone's health?

.....  
 .....

2. What is controversial about the researchers' study?

.....  
 .....

3. What is your opinion of the researchers' findings?

.....  
 .....

- What feeling does each of the idioms in bold from the text refer to?

**A. happiness B. sadness C. fear D. anger**

**COMPREHENSION TEST**

1. We can improve our children’s overall in the future in two ways . Write them down.

.....  
2. There are some possible effects of anger on someone’s health. Write down two of these effects.  
.....  
.....

3. Write down the sentence which indicates that scientists didn’t do any research to find any relation between feelings and health in the past.

.....  
.....

4. Some scientists believe that bad lifestyle choices affect health negatively. Write down two of these choices.

.....

5. Replace the underlined phrase with a suitable phrasal verb that has a similar meaning to it.

.....

6. Find a word in the text which means “believing that good things will happen in the future”

.....

7 . What do the underlined words ( pronouns ) refer to ?

.....

8. Write three things , mentioned in the article , that improve health .

.....  
.....

**Critical Thinking :**

The writer thinks that happiness affects health . Explain this statement , suggesting three benefits of happiness on health.

.....  
.....  
.....

2. “He who has health has hope; and he who has hope, has everything” ,by Thomas Carlyle. Think of this statement, and in two sentences, write down your point of view.

.....  
.....  
.....

## KEY WORDS

strenuous	using or needing a lot of effort.	مجهد / متعب
obese	extremely fat, in a way that is dangerous to your health.	السمنة المفرطة

## A. A growing problem مشكلة متفاقمة

In many countries, an increasing number of young people and adults are overweight or even **obese**. One reason for this is the growing popularity of fast food, **which** didn't use to be as common as it is now. Another big factor is lack of exercise. People would often walk to school or work, but these days many more of us drive. Modern technology has also played its part; we spend more and more time focusing on computer screens. Before the Internet was invented, nobody had dreamt of online shopping, but now we can buy almost anything without leaving the sofa.

في العديد من البلدان، عدد متزايد من الشباب و الكبار ذوو وزن زائد أو بدينين. احد الأسباب لهذا هو الشعبية المتزايدة للوجبات السريعة، التي لم تكن منتشرة كما هي الآن. عامل آخر كبير هو قلة التمارين. الناس كانوا غالبا ما يمشون إلى المدرسة أو العمل، لكن هذه الأيام المزيد منهم يذهبون بالسيارة. التكنولوجيا الحديثة كذلك لعبت دورها، نمضي المزيد و المزيد من الوقت مركزين أبصارنا على شاشات الكمبيوتر. قبل اختراع الانترنت، لم يحلم احد بالتسوق الإلكتروني، لكن الآن نستطيع شراء كل شيء تقريبا دون أن نغادر المقعد.

## B. Time to listen وقت الإصغاء

Health experts have been warning about this trend for years, and their advice is clear. Adults should aim to exercise for at least two and a half hours every week; for children and teenagers the target should be at least an hour a day. This might not sound very much. However, recent research shows that less than 50% of the British population manages this. School children are less physically active than **they** used to be. Girls in particular often dislike PE. This can lead to serious health problems.

خبراء الصحة قلقة من هذا التوجه منذ سنوات, و نصيحتهم واضحة. الكبار يجب أن يركزوا على ممارسة التمارين لمدة ساعتين و نصف على الأقل كل أسبوع, للأطفال و المراهقين يجب أن يكون الهدف ساعة على الأقل يوميا. قد لا يبدو ذلك شيئا مهما . على أي حال , بحث حديث يبين أقل من 50% من سكان بريطانيا يتمكنون من فعل ذلك . أطفال المدارسون أقل نشاط بدني مما كانوا عليه سابقا. البنات بالذات لا يكرهن حصص الرياضة . هذا يمكن أن يؤدي إلى مشاكل صحية خطيرة.

### C. It's good for you! انه مفيد لك

Experts recommend a mixture of activities. These should include moderate exercise, such as fast walking, and more **strenuous** exercise, like running. **They** also advise exercise that strengthens the muscles, for example sit-ups. The more muscle we build, the more calories we burn, and the fitter we become. In addition, exercise is a great way to **deal successfully with** stress. In a recent study, patients who had been suffering from depression reported a great improvement after increased physical activity.

الخبراء يوصون بخليط من النشاطات . هذه تشمل تمارين معتدلة , مثل المشي السريع , و تمارين عنيفة كالجري. ايضا ينصحون بتمارين شاقة تقوي العضلات , مثل تمارين الجلوس و النهوض . كلما بنينا عضلات أكثر , كلما حرقنا سعرات حرارية أكثر , و كلما أصبحنا أكثر لياقة . إضافة إلى ذلك , التمرين طريقة رائعة للتكيف مع التوتر. في دراسة حديثة , المرضى الذين يعانون من الإحباط سجلوا تحسنا كبيرا بعد زيادة النشاط البدني.

### D. Useful tips نصائح مفيدة

Of course this raises a question: how can I manage to fit in all this extra exercise?

The best way is to build it into our daily lives so that it becomes a routine. It doesn't have to take much extra time You could get off the bus one stop earlier than usual, or stand up when you're on the phone! Most importantly, we should find a sport that we enjoy doing. That way, we will all become fitter, healthier and happier.

بالطبع فان هذا يطرح سؤالا : كيف استطيع أن أتكيف مع المزيد من كل هذا التمرين الإضافي في حياتي ؟ أفضل طريقة هي أن نجعله جزءا من حياتنا اليومية بحيث يصبح روتينا. لا يحتاج لان يأخذ وقتا إضافيا كبيرا. بإمكانك النزول من الباص قبل نقطة نزولك المعتادة , أو تقف عندما تتحدث بالهاتف ! الأكثر أهمية , يجب أن نجد رياضة نستمتع بممارستها . بهذه الطريقة , سنصبح جميعنا أكثر لياقة , و صحة و سعادة.

10/ WB, page 13 :

Answer the following questions.

1. According to the article, what are the main reasons for higher rates of obesity?

.....

2. What is the minimum amount of exercise recommended for someone in your age group?

.....

3. Do most British people get enough exercise? Which sentence in the article tells you this?

.....

4. Guess the meaning of the highlighted word in paragraph C. Then check in a dictionary.

.....

5. The author suggests some ways of including exercise in our normal lives. Give two examples from the article.

.....

.....

**COMPREHENSION TEST**

1. An increasing number of young people and adults are overweight or obese because of many factors. Write down two of them.

.....

.....

2. There are two types of the exercise. Write them down.

.....

3. Write down the sentence which indicates that physical exercise help in treating stress.

.....

4. What does the underlined word "obese" in the first paragraph, mean?

.....

5. What do the underlined words "pronoun" refer to?

.....

6. Quote the sentence which indicates that you can buy things while lying on the couch?

.....

.....

7. What do girls usually refuse and what does that lead to?

.....

8. Replace the underlined phrase deal successfully with with suitable phrasal verb that has a similar meaning to it .

.....

**Critical Thinking :**

1. The writer states that an increasing number of young people and adults are overweight or even obese. Explain this statement , suggesting three ways to overcome this problem.

.....

.....

.....

2. Fitness leads to health. Think of this statement and , in two sentences , write down your point of view.

.....

.....

.....

## Health in Jordan: A report

### KEY WORDS

commitment	a promise to do something or to behave in a particular way	التزام
decline	to decrease in quantity or importance	يتناقص
healthcare	the prevention or treatment of illness by doctors, dentists, psychologists,	الرعاية الصحية
life expectancy	the length of time that a person or animal is expected to live	متوسط العمر المتوقع
infant mortality	death, especially on a large scale	وفيات الاطفال
reputation	the common opinion that people have about someone or something	سمعة
dental	relating to teeth	سني
sanitation	the systems which supply water and deal with human waste	الصرف الصحي
workforce	the people who are able to work	قوى عاملة
immunisation	giving a substance to a person (often by needle) to prevent them from getting a particular disease.	اكتساب المناعة / تطعيم

#### Introduction : مقدمة

Health conditions in Jordan are among the best in the Middle East. This is largely due

to the country's commitment to making healthcare for all a top priority. Advances in

education, economic conditions, **sanitation**, clean water, diet and housing have made our community healthier.

الظروف الصحية في الأردن هي من الأفضل في الشرق الأوسط. هذا وبشكل كبير نتيجة لالتزام البلد بجعل الرعاية الصحية للجميع أولوية قصوى. التقدم في التعليم، الأوضاع الاقتصادية، الصرف الصحي، الماء النظيف، التغذية، الإسكان جعل من مجتمعنا أكثر صحة.

**A: Healthcare centres:** مراكز الرعاية الصحية

As a result of careful planning, the number of healthcare services has been increasing

rapidly over the past years. More than 800 different kinds of healthcare centres have

been built, as well as 188 **dental** clinics. In 2012 CE, 98 per cent of Jordanian children

were fully immunised, thanks to **immunisation** teams that had been working towards

this goal for several years. Although there were remote areas of the country **where**

people had been without consistent access to electricity and safe water, almost 99 per

cent of the country's population now has access.

نتيجة للتخطيط الحكيم، فإن عدد خدمات الرعاية الصحية تزايد بسرعة عبر السنوات الماضية. أكثر من 800 نوع من مراكز الرعاية الصحية تم بنائها، وكذلك 188 عيادة سنية في عام 2012 م، 98% من الأطفال الأردنيين تم تطعيمهم، الفضل يعود إلى فرق التطعيم التي عملت لتحقيق الهدف منذ سنوات. على الرغم من وجود مناطق نائية في البلد حيث كان الناس بدون كهرباء و ماء امن، إلا أن 99% من سكان البلد لديهم كهرباء الآن.

## B : Hospitals : المستشفيات

Although the country has been focusing mainly on improving **its** primary healthcare facilities, it has not neglected its advanced medical facilities. The reputation of

Jordanian doctors has spread in the region, and now many more patients come to

Jordan for open heart surgery. In Jordan, the open heart surgery programme started in 1970 CE in Amman.

على الرغم من أن البلد كان يركز بشكل رئيسي على تحسين منشآت الرعاية الصحية الأولية , إلا انه لم يتجاهل منشآته الطبية المتقدمة . سمعة الأطباء الأردنيين انتشرت في المنطقة , و الآن المزيد من المرضى يأتون إلى الأردن لإجراء عمليات قلب مفتوح . في الأردن , برنامج عمليات القلب المفتوح بدأ عام 1970م في عمان.

## C : Life Expectancy: متوسط العمر المتوقع

The life expectancy figures show that Jordan's healthcare system is successful. In 1965

CE, the average Jordanian's life expectancy was age 50. In 2012 CE, this average life

expectancy had risen to 73.5. According to UNICEF statistics, between 1981 CE and

1991 CE, Jordan's **infant mortality** rates declined more rapidly than anywhere else in

the world – from 70 deaths per 1,000 births in 1981 CE to only 32 deaths per 1,000 births in 2014 CE.

أرقام توقعات الحياة تبين أن نظام الرعاية الأردني ناجح . في عام 1965 م كان معدل الحياة الأردني عند 50 عاما . في عام 2012م , معدل الحياة المتوقع هذا ارتفع إلى عمر 73.5 . وفقا لإحصاءات منظمة اليونيسيف , بين 1981م و 1991م , معدلات وفيات الأطفال في الأردن تناقص بسرعة أكثر من أي مكان آخر في العالم – من 70 وفاة لكل 1,000 ولادة عام 1981 إلى 32 وفاة لكل 1.000 ولادة عام 2014 م

### Conclusion: الخلاصة

The low infant mortality rate, as well as the excellent healthcare system, have been

contributing factors to Jordan's healthy population growth, which will result in a

strong **work force** with economic benefits for the whole country.

معدل وفاة الأطفال المنخفض , و كذلك نظام الرعاية الصحية الممتاز , عاملان ساهما في نمو الحالة الصحية لسكان الأردن , و الذي سينتج عنه قوة عمل لها فوائد اقتصادية للمجتمع كله.

### تمارين الكتاب

3 / SB, page 18 :

What do the words in bold from the report mean? Work in pairs.

1. sanitation : .....
2. dental : .....
3. immunisation : .....
4. infant morality : .....
5. workforce: .....

Read the report again and answer these questions.

1. What is the title of the report?

.....

2. What is the purpose of the sub-headings before different sections?

.....

3. What is the link between the introduction and the conclusion?

.....

4. Is the language formal or informal? How can you tell?

.....

### COMPREHENSION TEST

1. There are many factors that made Jordanians healthier. Write down two of them.

.....

2. Write down the sentence which indicates that most of Jordanian villages were supplied with electricity and water.

.....

.....

3. There are two factors have been contributing to Jordan's healthy population growth. Write them down.

.....

4. What kind of medical operation has Jordan made the most success?

.....

5. What was the life expectancy in Jordan in 1965 and 2012?

.....

6. Quote the sentence which indicates that Jordanian doctors have been well-known in the region .

.....

.....

7. Find a word in the report which means " **decreased in quantity or importance**"

.....

8. What do the underlined words ( pronouns) refer to ?

.....

**Critical Thinking :**

1.The writer states that children in Jordan are vaccinated against many illnesses. Explain this statement , mentioning three kinds of these illnesses.

.....

.....

.....

2 Health conditions in Jordan are among the best in the Middle East. Explain this statement and , in two sentences , write down your point of view.

.....

.....

.....

**UNIT TWO**  
**A healthy life**  
**MODEL ANSWERS**

**Grammar**

تمارين الكتاب

**6 / SB, page 15 :**

1. didn't use to 2. is used to 3. used to 4. aren't used to 5. used to

**3 / WB, page 11 :**

2. use to 3. used to 4. are used to 5. 'm not used to 6. use to

**4 / WB, page 11 :**

2. didn't use to 3. used to 4. are used to 5. used to 6. is now used to

**5 / WB, page 11 :**

2. used to living 3. used to make 4. used to having 5. used to wearing.

**Rewrite:**

1. to getting up early to study. 2. wasn't used to coming early but now he does.  
3. didn't use to watch TV every morning , but now I often do .  
4. isn't used to waking up early.

**5 / SB, page 19 :**

2. had been shopping 3. had been cooking

**6 / SB, page 19 :**

1. had 2. had 3. had 4. phoned 5. had been 6. had been planning 7. had 8. had been 9. had been

**Vocabulary**

تمارين الكتاب

**4 / SB, page 19 :**

- b. 1. permission 2. in the act of doing something wrong 3. unexpectedly 4. a useless possession

**1 / WB, page 11 :**

2. arthritis 3. ailment 4. immunisation 5. migraine 6. acupuncture 7. allergies

**2 / WB, page 11 :**

2. allergies 3. immunisation 4. ailment 5. migraine

**6 / WB, page 12 :**

1. sceptical 2. conventional 3. complementary 4. viable 5. alien

**7 / WB, page 12 :**

2. conventional medicine because it produces antibodies.  
3. better and healthier lifestyle choices  
4. suffer from health problems

## Complementary medicine: is it really a solution?

### تمارين الكتاب

4 / SB, page 15 :

1. True 2. True 3. False : fifty percent of patients said it helped .
4. False: complementary medicine can't be used in all medical treatment.

4 / SB, page 15 :

1. I think people's opinions of complementary medicine might have changed because of more information being freely available on the Internet. Additionally, more research may have been done on the effects of complementary medicine.
2. Complementary medicine provides a viable option for many different conditions, including anxiety, depression and certain allergies. It provides another option when conventional medicine does not address the problem adequately. For example, fifty percent of patients who tried complementary medicine said it helped.

### COMPREHENSION TEST

1. homoeopathy and acupuncture .
2. These days, many family doctors study complementary medicine alongside conventional treatments, and many complementary medicine consultants also have medical degrees.
3. It can never substitute for immunisations as it will not produce the antibodies needed to protect against childhood diseases. It also cannot be used to protect against malaria.
4. to ensure that no underlying condition is missed.
5. If patients wanted to receive this kind of nonconventional treatment, they used to have to consult a private practitioner who was likely not to have a medical degree.
6. ailment
7. A disease causing painful inflammation and stiffness of the joints.
8. they : patients / who : 70 percent of patients / it : homoeopathy

Critical Thinking :

1. There are many bad effects for this kind of treatment such as wasting time and money . Also , some kinds of homoeopathy have dangerous effects on patients . Another thing is that practitioners don't have medical degrees.

2. I think that complementary medicine can't replace modern medicine. For example , it cannot be used for all medical treatments and can never substitute for immunisations as it will not produce the antibodies needed to protect against childhood diseases. Also, it cannot be used to protect against malaria.

## Are happier people healthier – and, if so, why?

### تمارين الكتاب

1/ SB, page 16 :

1. Yes, sometimes I get so angry. For example, when my parents ask me to go to bed early.
- 2.. yes , because it can badly affect my health.

2 / SB, page 16 :

I think that happier people are healthier than unhappy people. They have a better perspective on life and will do almost everything with an optimistic attitude. Because of this, I think that they will make healthy, positive decisions in life; for example, they will choose to eat well and exercise more often

3/ SB, page 16 :

1. They can raise blood pressure and cause headaches, sleep problems and digestive problems, as well as leading to illnesses such as heart disease.
2. Many other researchers believe that bad lifestyle choices are responsible for these problems and not an individual's attitude.
3. I think that the researchers' findings are true because not everyone's personal circumstances and environment make it possible to live without worry. If we teach children to develop positive thinking, and to 'bounce back' after a setback, these qualities will improve their overall health in the future.

4 / SB, page 19 :

B. sadness : feel a bit blue D. anger : see red .

### COMPREHENSION TEST

1. teach children to develop positive thinking, and to 'bounce back' after a setback,
2. your blood pressure is raised and you can suffer from headaches, sleep problems and digestive problems.
3. Until recently, scientists had not investigated whether there is a link between positive feelings and good health.
4. smoking or lack of exercise
5. bounce back.
6. optimistic
7. who : the children / it : to live without worry / they : The researchers.
8. positivity, a supportive network of family and friends and an optimistic outlook on life.

Critical Thinking :

1. There are many benefits of happiness on health like having a better perspective on life Also, choosing to eat well and exercise more often.

2. I think that's right because it is possible to feel optimistic about the future when one is healthy. Hope for the future and a positive attitude are seen as, overall, the most important things in life.

### Get Moving!

تمارين الكتاب

10/ WB, page 13 :

1. the growing popularity of fast food; increasing inactivity (preferring to drive rather than walk, and shopping online)
2. at least an hour's exercise every day
3. No, they don't: 'However, recent research shows that less than 50% of the British population manages this.'
4. *Strenuous* means requiring a lot of effort.
5. getting off the bus one stop earlier than usual; standing up when you're on the phone

### COMPREHENSION TEST

1. the growing popularity of fast food, which didn't use to be as common as it is now. Another big factor is lack of exercise.
2. Fast walking, and more *strenuous* exercise, like running.
3. In addition, exercise is a great way to cope with stress.
4. extremely fat, in a way that is dangerous to your health.
5. which : fast food / they : school children / They : Experts.
6. Before the Internet was invented, nobody had dreamt of online shopping, but now we can buy almost anything without leaving the sofa.
7. Girls in particular often dislike PE. This can lead to serious health problems.
8. cope with

### Critical Thinking :

1. There are many ways to overcome this problem such as doing more exercise and avoiding fast food. Also, regulate the time of the meals.
2. I think that fitness leads to health . For example , if we do regular exercise and take care of our food , we can avoid the overweight which can lead to serious healthy problems . Also, it is very important to have enough hours of sleep every day to be able to do our daily tasks effectively.

### Health in Jordan: A report

تمارين الكتاب

3 / SB, page 18 :

1. sanitation – the systems which supply water and deal with human waste
2. dental – relating to teeth
3. immunisation – giving a substance to a person (often by needle) to prevent them from getting a particular disease.
4. infant mortality – deaths amongst babies or very young children
5. work force – the people who are able to work

4 / SB, page 18 :

1. Health in Jordan: A report
2. They tell the reader what the section will be about. If it is a very long report, they are very useful in helping the reader to find particular pieces of information and making the text easier to read.
3. 'Health conditions are among the best in the Middle East' and 'Advances ... have made our community healthier' links with 'excellent healthcare system' and 'contributing factors to Jordan's healthy population growth'.
4. The language is formal. There are no contractions; the sentences are quite long, with relative pronouns, etc.; the vocabulary is formal; there are linking expressions such as : *As a result of*, *According to* and *Although*; the statistics included add to the formality.

### COMPREHENSION TEST

1. Advances in education, economic conditions
2. Although there were remote areas of the country where people had been without consistent access to electricity and safe water, almost 99 per cent of the country's population now has access.
3. The low infant mortality rate, as well as the excellent healthcare system.
4. open heart surgery
5. In 1965 CE, the average Jordanian's life expectancy was age 50. In 2012 CE, this average life expectancy had risen to 73.5.
6. The reputation of Jordanian doctors has spread in the region, and now many more patients come to Jordan for open heart surgery.
7. decline.
8. where : remote areas of the country/ its : the country.

### Critical Thinking :

1. There are many kinds of these illnesses like tetanus , polio and measles. Also , they are vaccinated against smallpox.
2. I think that Health conditions in Jordan are among the best in the Middle East. This because the country's commitment to make healthcare for all a top priority. The number of healthcare services has been increasing rapidly over the past years and 98 per cent of Jordanian children were fully immunized. Life expectancy had risen to 73.5 and infant mortality rates have fallen down.

## UNIT THREE Medical advances

### Grammar

#### The Future Continuous

##### FORM .....

- Affirmative sentences:.....
- Sub (I, We, They, You He, She, It) + will +be +base verb + ing + complementary.
- At five o'clock tomorrow , I ( drive).....to Damascus.
- Negative sentences.....
- Sub (I, We, They, You He, She, It) + will not (won't) + be + base verb + ing + complementary.
- I ( not / work) ..... at ten o'clock tomorrow.
- Questions : .....
- Will+ sub (I, We, They, You He, She, It) + be +base verb + ing + complementary?  
..... you ( study)..... at eleven o'clock tomorrow morning?

##### KEY WORDS.....

next week/ month....etc, + specific time / tomorrow+ specific time/ in (three weeks) time  
/between .....and ..... + future time/ this time + future time

##### USES .....

- Talk about a continuous action in the future.                      يتحدث عن فعل سيكون مستمرا في المستقبل
- \* This time next year, they ( prepare)..... for their final exams.
- \* What ..... we ( do )..... .. in ten years' time?
- What will happen in the event of another act in the future.                      لما سيحدث عند حصول فعل اخر في المستقبل
- \* I won't be here tomorrow. I ( see )..... my doctor .

#### The Future Perfect

##### FORM .....

- Affirmative sentences: .....
- Sub (I, We, They, You He, She, It) + will +have +past participle + complementary.
- . By 2020 , I ( finish )..... my scientific project.
- Negative sentences:.....
- Sub (I, We, They, You He, She, It) + will not (won't) + have + past participle + complementary.
- By next summer , they ( not / achieve ) .....their goals.
- Questions:.....
- Will+ sub (I, We, They, You He, She, It) + have +past participle + complementary?
- ..... they ( fly).....to London by tomorrow morning?

##### KEY WORDS.....

by + future time/ before + future time/ within + time + from now /  
by+S +present simple / future time + since ,for

##### USES .....

- Talk about an action that will be completed by a particular time in the future.
- للتحدث عن فعل سوف يكون مكتملا في وقت محدد في المستقبل .
- We're late! By the time we get to the station, the train ( go) .....

تمارين الكتاب

5 / SB, page 21 :

Complete the mini-dialogues using the Future Continuous.

- A:** Can I call you tonight after 6 p.m., or..... (you have) dinner with your family then?  
**B:** No, I..... (not have) dinner at that time. I..... (watch) the news. My mum.....(prepare) dinner, because we usually eat at about 7 p.m.
- A:** What do you think..... (you do) in two years' time?..... (you work), or.....(you do) a university degree?
- B:** I certainly .....(not work) because I want to do a degree in Medicine. It's a very long course, so I..... (still study) in seven years' time!

5 / SB, page 21 :

Choose the correct form of the verbs.

- If you need to contact me next week, we'll *stay / be staying* at a hotel in Aqaba.
- If you need help to find a job, I will *help / be helping* you.
- I can't call my dad right now. He'll *board / be boarding* the plane. It takes off in an hour.
- We won't be home tomorrow night. We'll *watch / be watching* the football match at the stadium.
- Do you think you'll *miss / be missing* your school friends when you go to university?

5 / SB, page 25 :

Complete the sentences with the Future Perfect form of the verbs in brackets.

- This time tomorrow, we'll be celebrating because we..... our exams. (finish)
- This time next month, my parents..... married for twenty years. (be)
- The books that you ordered..... by the end of the week. (not arrive)
- By next year, .....you..... England? (visit)

4 / WB, page 16 :

There is one mistake in the verb tenses in each of the four conversations below. Underline the mistake and rewrite the verb in the correct tense.

- A:** What do you think you will be doing in two years' time?

**B:** I think I will be living in Karak, and I will study Geography.  
.....

- A:** Don't phone me at seven. I'll have dinner with my family.

**B:** OK, I'll phone at nine.  
.....

- A:** What time will you get here tomorrow?

**B:** At about three, I think. I'll be texting you the exact time later.  
.....

- A:** Please be quiet when you come home tonight. The baby will sleep.

**B:** Don't worry. I won't forget  
.....

Complete the sentences in the Future Perfect or the Future Continuous. The first one is done for you.

1. Next month, we / live / in this house for a year. Let's celebrate!

**Next month, we will have lived in this house for a year. Let's celebrate!**

2. Next Monday, I / work / in my new job.  
.....

3. you / do / all your homework by eight o'clock?  
.....

4. It's three o'clock now, so Miriam's flight / arrive / at Queen Alia International Airport.  
.....

5. you / meet us / at the library this afternoon?  
.....

6. You can borrow this book tomorrow. I / finish / it by then.  
.....

Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in the box. The first one is done for you.

going to + do/ going to + miss/ ~~going to + take~~/ will + have/ will + stay will + tell

Rami has broken his leg. It (1) **'s going to take** a long time to get better. He..... (2) in hospital for at least two weeks, and he..... (3) his leg in plaster for much longer. Rami..... (4) a lot of lessons at school, but he..... (5) some work while he's in hospital, and he also hopes his friends..... (6) him about the lessons he has missed.

The word (s)	English Meaning	Arabic Meaning
apparatus	the technical equipment or machinery needed for a particular purpose	جهاز / اداة
appendage	a body part, such as an arm or a leg, connected to the main trunk of the body	طرف ملحق بالجذع
bionic	describing a limb or body part that is electronically or mechanically powered	ذو اطراف الية
artificial	made or produced by human beings rather than occurring naturally	صناعي
cancerous	something that has or can cause cancer, a very serious disease in which cells in the body begin to grow abnormally	سرطاني
coma	a state of unconsciousness caused by a certain injury and that lasts for an extended period of time	غيبوبة
cross	angry or annoyed	غاضب / منزعج
dementia	a mental illness the symptoms of which are problems with memory, personality changes and problems with reasoning	جنون
drug	a medicine or a substance used for making medicines	دواء/ عقار
expansion	the act of making something bigger	توسيع
radiotherapy	the use of controlled amounts of radiation (a form of energy) to treat disease, especially cancer	علاج اشعاعي
scanner	a medical instrument that uses radiography to produce images of the insides of the human body	ماسح اشعاعي للصور الطبية
side effects	effects of medicine on your body in addition to curing pain or illness	اثار جانبية
sponsor	to financially support a person or an event	يدعم / يمول
symptom	a physical problem that might indicate a disease	اعراض
ward	a room in a hospital, especially for patients needing similar kinds of care	جناح/ قسم
implant	a piece of tissue, prosthetic device, or other object implanted in the body	زراعة عضو
limb	arm or leg of a person	طرف/ذراع, رجل
medical trial	trial to evaluate the effectiveness and safety of medications	دواء تجريبي
MRI	(Magnetic Resonance Imaging) a scan that uses strong magnetic fields to make a picture of the inside of someone's body for medical reasons	التصوير بالرنين المغناطيسي
outpatient	someone who goes to a hospital for treatment but does not stay for the night	مريض غير مقيم
paediatric	describing the area of medicine that deals with children and their illnesses	متعلق بطب الاطفال
pill	a small round piece of medicine to be swallowed whole	حبة/ قرص دواء
prosthetic	an artificial body part	طرف صناعي
publicise	to give information about something to the public, so that they know about	يعمم/ ينشر
stroke	an illness when a blood tube in your brain is blocked and your brain will be unable to function normally	سكتة دماغية
reputation	the common opinion that people have about someone or something	سُمعة

### Synonyms

apparatus	equipment	الآلة / اداة
appendage	limb	طرف
artificial	prosthetic	صناعي
sponsor	fund	يمول / يدعم
obese	Fat	سمنه

### Collocations

get an idea	تخطر له فكرة
spend a time	يمضي وقتنا
catch attention	يلفت الانتباه
attend a course	يلتحق بدورة
take interest	يستغل / يستفيد

### تمارين الكتاب

1 / WB, page 15 :

Make pairs of words with similar meanings and match them with the correct definitions. The first one is done for you.

**apparatus ,artificial , equipment, fund, prosthetic, sponsor**

Definitions	Words with similar meaning	
1. describes an object that is manufactured by humans.	<b>Artificial</b>	.....
2. tools or machines that have a particular purpose.	.....	.....
3. to pay for	.....	.....

2 / WB, page 15 :

Choose the correct verb to complete the collocations. Then, write two sentences of your own, using two collocations of your choice. The first one is done for you.

1. **catch** / **take** someone's attention
2. **get** / **catch** an idea
3. **take** / **get** an interest in something/ somebody
4. **spend** / **do** time doing something
5. **make** / **attend** a course

.....  
 .....

3 / WB, page 15 :

Use the words in the box to complete the sentences. One word is not needed. The first one is done for you.

helmet, inspire, monitor, reputation, risk, seat belt, self-confidence, tiny, ~~waterproof~~

1. You can wear your watch when you go swimming if it's **waterproof**.
2. It's amazing how huge trees grow from ..... seeds.
3. The Olympic Games often ..... young people to take up a sport.
4. Please hurry up. Let's not ..... missing the bus.
5. You must always wear a ..... in a car, whether you're the driver or a passenger.
6. When my grandfather had a heart attack, the doctors attached a special ..... to his chest.
7. It's important to encourage young people and help them develop .....
8. Petra has a ..... as a fascinating place to visit.

5 / WB, page 16 :

Replace the words and phrases in **bold** with words from the box. One word is not needed.

a coma, dementia, medical trials, pills, symptoms

1. Doctors look at the **signs of illness** before they decide how to treat the patient. ....
2. Before doctors prescribe drugs to patients, scientists perform **special tests** to make sure the drugs are safe. ....
3. After Ali's accident, he lay in **an unconscious state** for two weeks. ....
4. My grandfather has to take a lot of medicine – he takes six different **tablets** every day. ....

7 / SB, page 25 :

Edit the following text. There are two grammar mistakes and three spelling mistakes. Find and correct them.

In the near future, a new 'bionic eye' will have helped people with failing eyesite to see again. A devise inside the eye picks up an image from a small camera attached to a pair of sunglasses and send it to the brian, which interprets it as vision.

..... , ..... , ..... , ..... , .....

## Young Emirati inventor is going to travel the world

### KEY WORDS

The word (s)	English Meaning	Arabic Meaning
apparatus	the technical equipment or machinery needed for a particular purpose	جهاز / اداة
appendage	a body part, such as an arm or a leg, connected to the main trunk of the body	طرف ملحق بالجذع
artificial	made or produced by human beings rather than occurring naturally	صناعي
sponsor	to financially support a person or an event	يدعم / يمول
limb	arm or leg of a person	طرف/ذراع, رجل
prosthetic	an artificial body part	طرف صناعي

Ten-year-old Adeeb al-Balooshi, from Dubai, is going to travel to seven countries on a tour which has been organised and funded by Sheikh Hamdan bin Mohammad, Crown Prince of Dubai.

أديب البلوشي ذو العشر سنوات , من دبي , سيسافر إلى سبع دول في رحلة نظمها و مولها الشيخ حمدان بن محمد أمير دبي .

The boy caught Sheikh Hamdan's attention with his invention – a **prosthetic** limb for his father.

The Sheikh has taken a special interest in the boy, and hopes the tour that he is sponsoring for

Adeeb will give the young inventor more self-confidence and inspire other young Emirati inventors.

الولد لفت انتباه الشيخ حمدان باختراعه – طرف صناعي لوالده . اهتم الشيخ بشكل خاص بالولد , و يأمل أن الرحلة التي يرهاها لأديب ستعطي المخترع الصغير المزيد من الثقة بالنفس و تحفز المخترعين الإماراتيين الصغار الآخرين .

Adeeb got the idea for a special kind of prosthetic leg while he was at the beach with his family.

His father, **who** wears an artificial leg, could not swim in the sea as he could not risk getting

his leg wet. This inspired Adeeb to invent a waterproof prosthetic leg.

أديب جاءته فكرة نوع خاص من الرجل الصناعية بينما كان على الشاطئ مع عائلته . والده, الذي يضع رجلا صناعية , لم يتمكن من السباحة في البحر لأنه لا يمكنه المخاطرة بجعل رجله تبتل . هذا حفز أديب لان يخترع رجلا صناعية ضد الماء.

Adeeb is going to visit the USA, France, the UK, Ireland, Belgium, Italy and Germany, **where**

he will be staying with relatives. However, while he is in Germany, Adeeb will not be spending all his time sightseeing. He will be working with a specialist doctor to build the appendage.

He will also be attending a course on prosthetics and learning about different kinds of medical apparatus.

أديب سيزور أمريكا , فرنسا, بريطانيا , إيرلندا , بلجيكا , إيطاليا و ألمانيا , هناك سيقوم عند أقارب له . على أي حال , بينما هو في ألمانيا , لم يمض أديب كل الوقت على السياحة . سيكون يعمل مع طبيب مختص لتركيب الطرف. سيكون أيضا يحضر دورة في الأطراف الصناعية و يتعلم عن مختلف أنواع الأجهزة الطبية.

Adeeb has invented several other devices, including a tiny cleaning robot and a heart monitor, which is attached to a car seat belt. In the case of an emergency, rescue services and the driver's family will be automatically connected with the driver through this special checking device.

أديب اخترع عدة أجهزة أخرى , تشمل روبوت تنظيف صغير جدا و جهاز لمراقبة القلب يتم توصيله بحزام الأمان في السيارة .في حالة الطوارئ , طواقم الإنقاذ و سائق العائلة يتم توصيلهم أليا مع السائق من خلال الجهاز الخاص هذا.

He has also invented a fireproof helmet. This special equipment, **which** has a built-in camera system, will help rescue workers in emergencies.

أيضا اخترع خوذة ضد الحريق. هذه الأداة الخاصة , فيها آلة تصوير مدمجة , ستساعد في إنقاذ العمال في حالات الطوارئ.

It is for these reasons that Adeeb rightly deserves his reputation as one of the youngest inventors in the world.

لهذه الأسباب يستحق أديب بحق سمعته كأحد المخترعين الصغار في العالم .

### تمارين الكتاب

4 / SB, page 21 :

Listen to and read the newspaper article again and answer the questions.

1. Why was Sheikh Hamdan interested in helping Adeeb? Why did he offer Adeeb the gift of a world tour?

.....  
.....  
.....

2. How did Adeeb get his inspiration for a waterproof prosthetic leg?

.....  
.....

3. Who will Adeeb be staying with in Germany, and what will he be doing there?

.....  
.....

4. What does the suffix *-proof* mean (*waterproof*, line 15; *fireproof*, line 30)?

.....  
.....

5. What is the purpose of the in-car heart monitor? Why do you think that it is built into the seat belt?

.....  
.....

**COMPREHENSION TEST**

1. Apart from prosthetic leg , there were other inventions made by Adeeb. Write down two of them.

.....

2. There are two aims ( reasons ) behind the sponsorship of Adeeb by Sheikh Hamdan bin Mohammad. Write them down.

.....

.....

3. Write down the sentence which indicates that Adeeb won't only go to Germany for tourism.

.....

.....

4. Adeeb will do many things in Germany during his tour. Write down two of them.

.....

.....

5. Adeeb has invented a fireproof helmet for a special purpose. Write it down.

.....

6. Find a word in the text which means "arm or leg of a person".

.....

7. What does the underlined word " prosthetic " in the second paragraph, mean?

.....

8. What do the underlined words (pronouns) refer to?

.....

**Critical Thinking :**

1.The writer states that sponsoring inventors is a very noble matter. Explain this statement , suggesting three ways of sponsoring those genius people.

.....

.....

.....

.....

2 . Adeeb rightly deserves his reputation as one of the youngest inventors in the world. Think of this statement and , in two sentences, write down your point of view.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## In the future

### KEY WORDS

The word (s)	English Meaning	Arabic Meaning
coma	a state of unconsciousness caused by a certain injury and that lasts for an extended period of time	غيبوبة
dementia	a mental illness the symptoms of which are problems with memory, personality changes and problems with reasoning	جنون
drug	a medicine or a substance used for making medicines	دواء/ عقار
implant	a piece of tissue, prosthetic device, or other object implanted in the body	زراعة عضو
scanner	a medical instrument that uses radiography to produce images of the insides of the human body	ماسح اشعاعي للصور الطبية
side effects	effects of medicine on your body in addition to curing pain or illness	اثار جانبية
medical trial	trial to evaluate the effectiveness and safety of medications	دواء تجريبي
pill	a small round piece of medicine to be swallowed whole	حبة/ قرص دواء
symptom	a physical problem that might indicate a disease	اعراض
stroke	an illness when a blood tube in your brain is blocked and your brain will be unable to function normally	سكتة دماغية

### We will be able to have an operation to increase our intelligence.

سنتمكن من اجراء عملية لزيادة ذكائنا

Scientists have already developed brain implants **that** improve vision or allow disabled people to use **their** thoughts in order to control prosthetic limbs like arms, legs or hands, or operate a wheelchair. In 2012 CE, research on monkeys showed that a brain implant improved their decision-making abilities. How will humans benefit from this research? Scientists hope to develop a similar device to help people who have been affected by brain damage, which could be caused by dementia, a stroke or other brain injuries.

العلماء طوروا بالفعل زراعة الدماغ التي تحسن من الرؤية أو تسمح للمعاقين من أن يستخدموا أفكارهم للتحكم بالأطراف الصناعية كالذراعين و الأرجل و اليدين, أو تشغيل عربة المقعدين. في عام 2012 ميلادي , الأبحاث على القرود بينت أن زراعة الدماغ حسنت من قدرتها على اتخاذ القرارات . كيف يستفيد البشر من هذا البحث ؟ العلماء يأملون أن يطوروا جهازا مشابها لمساعدة الناس الذين تضررت أدمغتهم بسبب الجنون أو السكتة الدماغية أو أي إصابة للدماغ.

### Doctors will be able to communicate with people in a coma.

سيتمكن الأطباء من التواصل مع الناس و هم في غيبوبة

In 2010 CE, neuroscientists confirmed that it was possible to communicate with some patients in a coma, by using a special brain scanner called an MRI. **They** suggested that, in the future, more meaningful dialogue with patients in a coma would be possible. Two years later, it has finally happened. The scanner, used on a man who has been in a coma for more than twelve years, proves that he has a conscious, thinking mind – a fact that had previously been

disputed by many. Doctors plan to use similar brain-scanning techniques in the future to find out whether patients are in pain, or what they would like to be done in order to improve their quality of life.

في عام 2010 م أكد علماء الأعصاب انه من الممكن التواصل مع بعض الناس المرضى و هم في غيبوبة , و ذلك باستخدام ماسح صوتي خاص للدماغ يسمى التصوير بالرنين المغناطيسي و أشاروا إلى انه, في المستقبل , من المحتمل إجراء حوار ذو معنى أكثر مع المرضى و هم في غيبوبة. و بعد ذلك بعامين حصل هذا أخيرا . الماسح الضوئي. استخدم على رجل ظل في غيبوبة لأكثر من 12 عاما, و قد برهن الماسح الضوئي إلى أن الرجل لديه وعي / إدراك, و عقل مفكر – وهذه حقيقة كان مختلف عليها من قبل الكثيرين. يخطط الأطباء لاستخدام تقنيات مماثلة لمسح الدماغ في المستقبل لمعرفة فيما إذا كان المرضى يشعرون بالألم , أو ما يودون القيام به من أجل تحسين نوعية حياتهم .

### **A new drug will help to treat certain types of cancer almost instantly.**

هناك دواء جديد سيساعد على علاج انواع معينة من السرطان على الفور تقريبا

A new cancer drug is being trialed in Plymouth, UK, **which** doctors hope will extend the lives of cancer patients and reduce their symptoms overnight. It is taken as a single **pill** every morning, and so far patients have shown none of the usual side effects such as the sickness and hair loss that are experienced when undergoing other forms of cancer treatment. The new treatment works by blocking a protein which causes cancerous cells to grow. It will improve patients' life expectancy and quality of life much more quickly than any other treatment. The patients were interviewed a year after starting the treatment and are fit and well, saying that they are definitely going to continue the trial. They have every reason to believe the new drug is going to work. Doctors at Plymouth Hospital hope that it will help patients from all over the world.

دواء جديد للسرطان يتم تجربته في مدينة بليموث , المملكة المتحدة , و الذي يأمل الأطباء انه سيمدد حياة مرضى السرطان و سيقفل أعراضهم بين عشية وضحاها . يؤخذ على شكل حبة دواء واحدة كل صباح, و لم يظهر المرضى حتى الآن أيا من التأثيرات الجانبية المعتادة مثل الشعور بالغثيان و فقدان الشعر التي يمر بها المرضى عندما يخضعون لأشكال أخرى من علاج السرطان. يعمل العلاج الجديد عن طريق منع بروتين معين و الذي يسبب نمو الخلايا السرطانية . وهذا العلاج سيحسن من متوسط العمر المتوقع للمرضى و سيحسن نوعية الحياة بسرعة أكبر بكثير من أي علاج آخر . و أجريت مقابلات مع المرضى بعد عام من بدء العلاج و هم بصحة جيدة, قائلين أنهم بالتأكيد سيواصلون تجربة العلاج. لديهم كل الأسباب للاعتقاد بان الدواء الجديد سينجح. و يأمل الأطباء في مستشفى بليموث أن العلاج الجديد سيساعد المرضى من جميع أنحاء العالم

### **تمارين الكتاب**

4 / SB, page 23 :

Look at the third sub-heading in the article. How far do you think this is true? Give reasons.

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

5 / SB, page 23 :

Make correct sentences about the future.

1. He / hope / become a teacher one day.

2. I / intend / apply for a job when I finish university.

3. Many hospitals / plan / use robots to help nurses in the future.

4. How / you / intend / solve the problem?

5. Our school / hope / raise enough money to build a new library.

6. you / intend / buy tickets for the play?

### COMPREHENSION TEST

1. Scientists have developed brain implants for two purposes. Write them down.

2. Write down the sentence which indicates that experts are carrying out tests on a new cancer drug that may save lives of patients.

3. Usual cancer treatment has had some side effects. Write down two of them.

4. There are three reasons mentioned in the text that damage brain. Write them down.

5. Find a word in the text which means "a medicine or a substance used for making medicines".

6. What does the underlined word "pill" in the last paragraph mean?

7. Why do neuroscientists use a special brain scanner called "MRI"?

8. What do the underlined words "pronouns" refer to?

### Critical Thinking :

1. The writer states that there will be many implications for the world if people live longer due to improving life expectancy. Explain this statement, mentioning three bad consequences for the increasing number of population.

2. Patients who suffer from cancer will agree to undergo new types of treatment. Think of this statement and, in two sentences, write down your point of view.

## The King Hussein Cancer Center

### KEY WORDS

The word (s)	English Meaning	Arabic Meaning
outpatient	someone who goes to a hospital for treatment but does not stay for the night	مريض غير مقيم
expansion	the act of making something bigger	توسع
radiotherapy	the use of controlled amounts of radiation (a form of energy) to treat disease, especially cancer	علاج اشعاعي
cancerous	something that has or can cause cancer, a very serious disease in which cells in the body begin to grow abnormally	سرطاني
ward	a room in a hospital, especially for patients needing similar kinds of care	جناح/ قسم
paediatric	describing the area of medicine that deals with children and their illnesses	متعلق بطب الاطفال
reputation	the common opinion that people have about someone or something	سَمعة

The King Hussein Cancer Center (KHCC) is Jordan's only comprehensive cancer treatment centre. **It** treats both adult and paediatric patients. As the population of the country increases, more and more families will rely on the hospital for cancer treatment. Patients come not only from Jordan but also from other countries in the region, as they are attracted by its excellent reputation, lower costs, and cultural and language similarities.

مركز الحسين للسرطان, هو المركز الأردني الوحيد الشامل لمعالجة السرطان. يعالج المرضى الكبار و الصغار على حد سواء . لان عدد سكان البلد يتزايد , المزيد و المزيد من العائلات ستعتمد على المستشفى لعلاج السرطان . المرضى يأتون ليس فقط من داخل الأردن بل أيضا من بلدان أخرى في المنطقة , لأنهم تجذبهم السمعة الممتازة و التكلفة المنخفضة و التشابه الثقافي و اللغوي.

In order to cope with the increase in demand for treatment, the KHCC has begun an

**expansion** programme. Building started in 2011 CE. The hospital will have more than doubled its capacity by 2016 CE, increasing space for new cancer cases from 3,500 per year to 9,000.

للتكيف مع الطلب المتزايد على العلاج , بدأ المركز ببرنامج توسع . البناء بدأ عام 2011م , سيكون للمستشفى ضعف سعته بحلول عام 2016 م , بزيادة لاستيعاب حالات السرطان من 3500 إلى 9000 حالة .

By then, they will have added 182 extra beds, along with bigger units for different

departments, including radiotherapy. New adult and paediatric wards will have opened.

Additionally, they will have built a special ten-floor outpatients' building, with an education

centre **which** will include teaching rooms and a library.

حينها , سيكونون قد أضافوا 182 سريرا إضافيا , و أقسام اكبر لكل دائرة , بما فيها العلاج بالأشعة . أجنحة جديدة للكبار و الصغار سيكون قد تم افتتاحها . إضافة لذلك , سيكونون قد أتموا بناءا من عشر طوابق كعيادات خارجية , فيها مركز تعليمي يشمل غرف تعليمية و مكتبة .

Many cancer patients live far away from Amman, **where** the KHCC is located, and the journey to and from the hospital is often difficult. For this reason, there are plans to extend cancer care facilities to other parts of Jordan. In the near future, King Abdullah University Hospital in Irbid hopes to set up radiotherapy machines, so that cancer patients from northern Jordan will not have to go to Amman for radiotherapy treatment.

العديد من مرضى السرطان يسكنون بعيدا عن عمان , حيث يقع المركز , و الرحلة من و إلى المركز غالبا صعبة. لهذا السبب , هناك خطط لنشر مباني لرعاية مرض السرطان إلى أجزاء أخرى من الأردن . في المستقبل القريب , مستشفى الملك عبدالله الجامعي في اربد يتوقع أن يركب أجهزة العلاج بالأشعة , لكي لا يضطر مرضى السرطان في شمال الأردن للذهاب إلى عمان للعلاج بالأشعة .

### تمارين الكتاب

1 / SB, page 24 :

Read the following information and discuss the questions.

The population of Jordan increased from approximately 2.3 million in 1980 CE to about 6.5 million in 2010 CE. It is expected that the population will keep on increasing, and by 2050 CE it will be about 11.5 million.

1. How do you think this increase in population will affect Jordan's housing, education and health facilities?

.....

2. What can be done to help Jordan cope with this increase in population?

.....

4 / SB, page 25 :

Read the article again and answer the questions.

1. Why does the hospital need to expand?

.....

2. Give three reasons why patients from other countries visit the centre.

.....

3. What is one of the disadvantages of the KHCC for patients who live far from Amman?

.....

4. What plans are there for increasing cancer care facilities in other parts of Jordan?

.....

**COMPREHENSION TEST**

1. Patients from other countries visit the KHCC for many reasons. Write down two of them.  
.....
2. Write down the sentence which indicates that The KHCC treats people from all ages.  
.....
3. How many cancer cases is the hospital expected to treat after completion of its expansion?  
.....
4. What is the main difficulty do cancer patients who live outside Amman face?  
.....
5. Read the quotation. "Wherever the art of Medicine is loved, there is also a love of Humanity. Hippocrates (460 BCE–370 BCE) Do you agree with it? Why/Why not?  
.....
6. Write down the sentence which indicates that Jordan has one cancer centre.  
.....
7. What do the underlined words ( pronouns ) refer to ?  
.....
8. What does the underlined word **expansion** in the second paragraph mean?  
.....

**Critical Thinking :**

1. The writer states that Jordan has a great reputation in the area of medicine. Explain this statement , mentioning three reasons why health conditions in Jordan are advanced .  
.....  
.....  
.....

2. The King Hussein Cancer Center is an important facility that contributes to medical tourism . Think of this statement and , in two sentences, write down your point of view.  
.....  
.....  
.....

## Accident victim tests first artificial limb

### KEY WORDS

The word (s)	English Meaning	Arabic Meaning
artificial	made or produced by human beings rather than occurring naturally	صناعي
prosthetic	an artificial body part	طرف صناعي
bionic	describing a limb or body part that is electronically or mechanically powered	ذو أطراف آلية

Scientists have successfully invented a prosthetic hand with a sense of touch. It is an exciting new invention, which **they** plan to develop. It is possible that, in the not-too-distant future, similar artificial arms and legs will have taken the place of today's prosthetic limbs.

اخترع العلماء و بنجاح يد صناعية فيها حاسة اللمس . انه اختراع جديد و مثير , يخططون لتطويره . من الممكن, ليس في المستقبل البعيد جدا, أرجلا و أذراعا صناعية شبيهة ستحل محل أطراف اليوم الصناعية.

Dennis Sorensen, a 39-year-old from Denmark, was the first person to try out the new invention. After losing his left hand in an accident, he had been using a standard prosthetic hand for nine years. The new hand, **which** was developed by Swiss and Italian scientists, was a huge improvement. With it, Sorensen could not only pick up and manipulate objects, but he could also feel them. 'When I held an object, I could feel if it was soft or hard, round or square,' he explained. He said that the sensations were almost the same as the ones he felt with his other hand.

دينيس سورينسن 39 عاما من الدنمارك , كان أول شخص يجرب الاختراع الجديد , بعدما فقد يده اليسرى في حادث سير , كان يستخدم يدا صناعية عادية لمدة 9 أعوام . اليد الجديدة , التي طورها علماء سويسريون و ايطاليون كانت تحسنا عظيما .بواسطتها لم يتمكن سورينسن فقط من التقاط و التحكم بالأشياء , لكنه تمكن من الشعور بها . " عندما أمسكت بشيء, تمكنت من الإحساس به إذا كان ناعما أو قاسيا أو دائريا أو مربعا " أوضح. قال أن الأحاسيس كانت تقريبا نفس الأحاسيس التي شعر بها في يده الأخرى.

Unfortunately, Sorensen was only taking part in trials, and the equipment is not ready for general use yet. He was only allowed to wear it for a month, for safety reasons. So now he has his old artificial hand back. However, he hopes that soon he will be wearing the new type of hand again. He is looking forward to the time **when** similar artificial limbs are available for the thousands of people who need them. He will have helped to transform their lives.

لسوء الحظ , سورينسن كان يشارك فقط في عمل تجريبي , و المعدات لم تكن جاهزة للاستخدام العام حتى ذلك الوقت . سمح له بارتدائها لمدة شهر فقط , لأسباب متعلقة بالأمان . لذلك هو الآن معه يده الصناعية القديمة . على أي حال , هو يأمل بان يلبس قريبا النوع الجديد من اليد ثانية .انه يتطلع بشوق للوقت الذي تكون فيه أطراف صناعية شبيهة متوفرة لآلاف الناس الذين يحتاجونها. سيكون قد ساعد على تغيير حياتهم .

10/ WB, page 17 :

Read the article again and answer the questions.

1 .Who invented the new prosthetic hand? What is special about it?

.....

2 Why does Dennis Sorensen need a prosthetic hand?

.....

3 Which hand is he wearing now? Why?

.....

4 Who do the bold pronouns 'I' refer to in line 7 ?

.....

5 Find a word that is the opposite of 'natural' in the first and third paragraphs.

.....

COMPREHENSION TEST

1. Dennis Sorensen could do two things by using the new prosthetic hand. Write them down.

.....

2.Quote the sentence which indicates the nationalities of the two scientists who developed the new prosthetic hand.

.....

3. How does the newly –invented prosthetic hand differ from old ones?

.....

4. Write down the sentence which indicates that in the near future, there is a plan to replace old prosthetic limbs with new developed ones.

.....

.....

5. Why had Sorensen been using artificial limb?

.....

6. Find a word in the first paragraph that means **an artificial body part** .

.....

7. Why can't Sorensen wear his new hand now ?

.....

8. What do the underlined words ( pronouns) refer to ?

.....

Critical Thinking :

1.The writer thinks that scientists have developed many new important medical inventions.

Explain this statement , mentioning three new inventions that have influenced the patients' life .

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**UNIT THREE**  
**Medical advances**  
**MODEL ANSWERS**



تمارين الكتاب

5 / SB, page 21 :

1. will you be having
2. will not be having; will be watching; will be preparing
3. you will be doing; Will you be working; will you be doing
4. will not/won't be working; will still be studying

5 / SB, page 21 :

1. be staying 2. help 3. be boarding 4. be watching. 5 miss

5 / SB, page 25 :

1. will have finished 2. will have been 3. will not have arrived 4. will, have visited

4 / WB, page 16 :

1. will be studying 2. will be having 3. will text 4. will be sleeping

11 / WB, page 17 :

2. Next Monday, I will be working in my new job.
3. Will you have done all your homework by eight o'clock?
4. It's three o'clock now, so Miriam's flight will have arrived at Queen Alia International Airport.
5. Will you be meeting us at the library this afternoon?
6. You can borrow this book tomorrow. I'll have finished it by then.

7 / WB, page 16 :

2. will stay 3. will have 4. 's going to miss 5. 's going to do 6. will tell



تمارين الكتاب

1 / WB, page 15 :

1. *artificial*; prosthetic 2. apparatus; equipment 3. fund; sponsor

2 / WB, page 15 :

1. *catch* 2. get 3. take 4. spend 5. attend

3 / WB, page 15 :

1. *waterproof* 2. tiny 3. Inspire 4. risk 5. seat belt 6. monitor 7. self-confidence 8. reputation

5 / WB, page 16 :

1. symptoms 2. medical trials 3. a coma 4. pills

7 / SB, page 25 :

- 1 will help 2 eyesight 3 device 4 sends 5 brain

## Young Emirati inventor is going to travel the world

تمارين الكتاب

4 / SB, page 21 :

1. Sheikh Hamdan was interested in Adeeb's invention of a prosthetic limb for his father. He offered Adeeb the world tour to help to give him more self-confidence and to inspire other young inventors from the UAE.
2. He got the inspiration when he was at the beach with his family. His father couldn't swim because he couldn't risk getting his prosthetic leg wet.
3. Adeeb will be staying with relatives in Germany. He will be working with a doctor to build his new invention of the waterproof prosthetic leg, as well as attending a course to find out more about prosthetics.
4. It means 'to provide protection against'.
- 5 The in-car heart monitor will be used to keep an eye on those with a heart problem while they are driving or in a car. It is built into the seat belt so that when the driver or passenger wears it, it is near their heart.

### COMPREHENSION TEST

1. Tiny cleaning robot and fireproof helmet.
2. giving the young inventor more self-confidence and inspire other young Emirati inventors.
3. However, while he is in Germany, Adeeb will not be spending all his time sightseeing.
4. He will be working with a specialist doctor to build the appendage. He will also be attending a course on prosthetics and learning about different kinds of medical apparatus.
5. It will help rescue workers in emergencies.
6. limb
7. an artificial body part
8. who : His father ( Adeeb's father) / where : Germany / which : a fireproof helmet (This special equipment)

### Critical Thinking :

1. There are many ways of sponsoring those genius people like supporting them financially and honoring them .Also, providing convenience to them.
2. I think that Adeeb rightly deserves his reputation as one of the youngest inventors in the world because he has made many great achievements in the area of the invention . Also, his inventions has helped many people who suffered from some difficulties by giving them a hope to be like others.

### In the future

تمارين الكتاب

4 / SB, page 23 :

**Suggested answer:** This website is promoting medical advances, so its information may be exaggerated. The new drug may be less effective than the article claims. In addition, the text says 'so far' treatment is going well; it does not say it has been proven to work.

5 / SB, page 23 :

1. He hopes to become a teacher one day.
2. I intend to apply for a job when I finish university.
3. Many hospitals plan to use robots to help nurses in the future.
4. How do you intend to solve the problem?
5. Our school hopes to raise enough money to build a new library.
6. Do you intend to buy tickets for the play?

### COMPREHENSION TEST

1. To improve vision or allow disabled people to use their thoughts in order to control prosthetic limbs like arms, legs or hands, or operate a wheelchair.
2. A new cancer drug is being trialed in Plymouth, UK, which doctors hope will extend the lives of cancer patients and reduce their symptoms overnight.
3. sickness and hair loss.
4. dementia, a stroke or other brain injuries.
5. drug.
6. a small round piece of medicine to be swallowed whole.
7. to communicate with some patients in a coma
8. that : brain implants/ their : disabled people / they : neuroscientists/ which : Anew cancer drug.

#### Critical Thinking :

1. There are many bad consequences for the increasing number of population like increasing demand on food , water and natural resources. Also, greater pressure on education and health care.
2. I think that patients who suffer from cancer will agree to undergo new types of treatment because they have suffered from the side effects of old kinds of treatment such as sickness and hair loss. Also, they believe that new types of treatment may help them .

### The King Hussein Cancer Center

#### تمارين الكتاب

#### 1 / SB, page 24 :

1. It might get more difficult for the government to help people, and taxes might increase.
2. The government should spend more money making sure there are enough facilities for everyone.

#### 4 / SB, page 25 :

1. The hospital needs to expand because there is more demand for treatment.
2. It has an excellent reputation, the costs are lower and there are cultural and language similarities.
3. The journey to and from the hospital is often difficult.
4. There are plans to set up radiotherapy machines in Irbid.

### COMPREHENSION TEST

1. Patients are attracted by its its excellent reputation, lower costs.
2. It treats both adult and paediatric patients.
3. 9,000 cases per a year.
4. the journey to and from the hospital is often difficult .
5. Yes, I agree with this quotation because doctors depend on love to strengthen their relationships with their patients and that is so helpful in curing diseases.
6. The King Hussein Cancer Center (KHCC) is Jordan's only comprehensive cancer treatment centre.
7. it :The King Hussein Cancer Center / where : Amman / which : educational centre.

#### 8. the act of making something bigger

#### Critical Thinking :

1. There are many reasons why health conditions in Jordan are advanced like the commitment of the country to make health care a top priority and advances in many areas like education , technology . Also, Jordanian doctors are among the best in the Arab world.
2. I think that The King Hussein Cancer Center is an important facility that contributes to medical tourism because of its highly reputation and reasonable cost . These qualities encourage patients from other countries to come and stay in Jordan for treatment.

## **Accident victim tests first artificial limb**

### **تمارين الكتاب**

**10/ WB, page 17 :**

- 1. Swiss and Italian scientists; it allows the wearer to feel objects.**
- 2. because he lost his left hand in an accident**
- 3. his old artificial hand, because the new hand is not yet ready for general use**
- 4. Dennis Sorensen**
- 5. artificial**

### **COMPREHENSION TEST**

- 1. Sorensen could pick up and manipulate objects, he could also feel them.**
- 2. The new hand, which was developed by Swiss and Italian scientists, was a huge improvement.**
- 3. It is with a sense of touch.**
- 4. It is possible that, in the not-too-distant future, similar artificial arms and legs will have taken the place of today's prosthetic limbs.**
- 5. He lost his left hand in an accident.**
- 6. an artificial body part.**
- 7. Sorensen was only taking part in trials, and the equipment is not ready for general use yet. He was only allowed to wear it for a month, for safety reasons.**
- 8. they : Scientist / which : the new hand / when : the time**

**Critical Thinking :**

- 1. There are new inventions that have influenced the patients' life like prosthetic hand with sense of touch and new drug which may extends the life of cancer patients . Also, brain implant which improves vision.**
- 2. I think that the new inventions can improve someone's life because they will optimistically change the outlook of the life . also , some people who benefit from these inventions can start new jobs which they couldn't taken in the past.**

## UNIT FOUR Success stories

### Grammar

## Cleft Sentences

A cleft sentence ( الجملة الجزئية ) is a complex sentence ( جملة معقدة ) (one with a main clause ( جملة رئيسية ) and a dependent clause). ( جملة تابعة )

We can usually express the meaning of a cleft sentence with a simple sentence.  
It is called 'cleft' sentence because there are two parts to the sentence.

\* Reem won the golden medal last year .  $\implies$  The person who won the golden medal last year was Reem.

- We use cleft sentences in order to **emphasise certain pieces of information**.
- We join the most important piece of information to a relative clause, often with *who*, *where* or *that*.
- We can start cleft sentences with the following phrases, among others:

The thing that .....	..... الشيء الذي
The person who .....	..... الشخص الذي
The year when / in which .....	..... السنة التي / فيها
The time when .....	..... الوقت عندما
The place where .....	..... المكان حيث
The way in which .....	..... الطريقة التي بها
What .....	..... الذي
It .....	..... انه

\*\*\* عندما تبدأ الجملة بـ **It** فإن الضمير الذي تبدأ به جملة الوصل هو **That**

Huda won the prize for Art last year  $\implies$  It was last year that Huda won the prize for Art.

\*\*\*\*\* Parts of the sentence:

**John borrowed a book from the library last week.**

**The subject:** *John*

**The verb:** *borrowed*

**The object:** *a book*

**The place:** *the library*

**The time:** *last week*

Subject as focus	It was <b>John</b> who/that borrowed a book from the library last week.
Object as focus	It was <b>a book</b> what/ that John borrowed from the library last week.
Place as focus	It was <b>the library</b> where/ that John borrowed a book from last week.
Time as focus	It was <b>last week</b> when/that John borrowed a book from the library.

\*\*\* عندما تبدأ الجملة بـ **What** للتأكيد على جملة واقعة مفعول به لفاعل يكون ترتيب الجملة كما يلي :

What + جملة + is /am/ are/ was/ were + معلومات عن الشيء المؤكد عليه

I would like to go to London next year.  $\Longleftarrow$  **What** I would like to do next year is go to London.

\*\*\*\*\* ترتيب الجملة الجزئية :

1. It + is / was + معلومات عن المؤكد + **who / which / where / that** + الشيء الذي نريد توكيده

- نختار is / was حسب زمن الجملة ونختار ضمير وصل مناسب حسب المؤكد

-The Olympic Games were held in London in 2012 CE.

It was 2012 .....

2. The thing / person / who / place / time + **who / which / where / that** + معلومات عنه + is / was + المؤكد

-The Olympic Games were held in London in 2012 CE.

The place .....

The time .....

The event.....

#### تمارين الكتاب

6/ SB, page 29 :

We want to emphasise the part of the sentence which is in bold in sentences 1–3.

Match each one to an appropriate cleft sentence a–c.

1. The Great Mosque in Cordoba was built in 784 CE by **Abd al-Rahman I**.

2. **The Great Mosque in Cordoba** was built in 784 CE by Abd al-Rahman I.

3. The Great Mosque in Cordoba was built in **784 CE** by Abd al-Rahman I.

a. The year when the Great Mosque in Cordoba was built was 784 CE.

b. Abd al-Rahman I was the person who built the Great Mosque in Cordoba in 784 CE.

c. The mosque that was built by Abd al- Rahman I in 784 CE was the Great Mosque in Cordoba.

1. ....

2. ....

3. ....

7/ SB, page 29 :

Write this sentence in three different ways, emphasising the parts underlined in each case.

**Al-Jazari** invented the mechanical clock in the twelfth century.

1 .....

2 .....

3 .....

8/ SB, page 29 :

Rewrite these sentences, emphasising the part in bold, and using the structure as shown.

1. **Al-Kindi** contributed to the invention of the oud.

*The person who*.....

2. Jabir ibn Hayyan did his research in a laboratory in **Iraq**.

*The country where*.....

3. **Ali ibn Nafi** ' established the first music school in the world.

*It was*.....

4. **Jabir ibn Hayyan** also invented ink that can be read in the dark.

*It was*.....

5. Al-Kindi is especially famous for **his work in geometry**.

*It is*.....

3/ WB, page 20 :

Make cleft sentences, stressing the information in bold. The first one is done for you.

1. **Queen Rania** opened the Children's Museum of Jordan in 2007 CE.

**It was Queen Rania who opened the Children's Museum of Jordan in 2007 CE.**

2. Petra was made a World Heritage Site **in 1985 CE**.

The year.....

3. I stopped working at **11 p.m.**

It was.....

4. **My father** has influenced me most.

The person.....

5. I like **Geography** most of all.

The subject.....

6. **The heat** made the journey unpleasant.

It was.....

## Revision of relative clauses

\*\* تستخدم ضمائر الوصل كما يلي :

**Who/ that :** بعد اسم عاقل

- I met the teacher **who** taught me last year.

**Which/ that :** بعد اسم غير عاقل

-Ali bought the car **which** he needed.

**When :** بعد اسم زمن

-I remember the day **when** we first met.

**Where :** بعد اسم مكان

That's the restaurant **where** we met for the first time.

**Whose :** للملكية

-He's the man **whose** daughter I met in Jordan.

**الفرق بين where و which :**

تستخدم **where** بعد اسم مكان إذا تبعه فاعل ثم فعل

تستخدم **which** بعد اسم مكان إذا تبعه فعل مباشرة .

- He went to the village ..... he was born

- He went to the village ..... is peaceful.

- ربط جملتين في جملة واحدة باستخدام **relative pronoun**

\* الاسم الرئيسي **head noun** وهو الاسم المذكور في الجملة الأولى و مكرر أو له ضمير عائد عليه في الجملة الثانية:

**الخطوات :** نزل الجملة الأولى كما هي حتى الاسم الرئيسي.

. \* إذا كان الاسم الرئيسي في الجملة الأولى عاقل اكتب بعده **who** .

\* إذا كان الاسم الرئيسي في الجملة الأولى غير عاقل اكتب بعده **which** .

\* إذا كان الاسم الرئيسي في الجملة مكان اكتب بعده **where** .

\* إذا كان الاسم الرئيسي في الجملة زمان اكتب بعده **when** .

\* إذا كان الاسم المكرر في الجملة الثانية ينتهي بـ 's' الملكية أو مسبوق بصفة ملكية **her, your, our, my, his,** اكتب **whose** ثم بقية الجملة.

- The police arrested **the driver** .**He** caused the accident.

-The police arrested the driver **who** caused the accident.

إذا وقعت كلمات أخرى بين الاسم الرئيسي في الجملة الأولى و النقطة نهاية الجملة الأولى فإننا نكتبها في نهاية الجملة التي نكونها من ربط الجملتين.

- **Tareq was very angry** .**He** lost his job.

- Tareq **who** lost his job, was very angry.

-**Abeer** was very happy. **Her** father returned from Mecca last night.

- Abeer, **whose** father returned from Mecca last night, was very happy.

-She visited the **school** .She had studied **there**. ( ظرف مكان )

- She visited the school **where** she had studied.

- I can't forget **the day** .I saw her **then**. ( ظرف زمان )

- I can't forget the day **when** I saw her.

**Defining relative clauses :** جمل الوصل المحددة

**necessary information** شبه الجملة الموصولة المحددة لا يمكن حذفها من الجملة لان معنى الجملة يختل فهي تقدم معلومة اساسية و تتحدث عن اكثر من شيء او شخص واحد .

- My brother who lives in Amman is a doctor.
- Children who hate chocolate are uncommon.

\*\* ملاحظة : تستخدم **that** مع العاقل و غير العاقل و كذلك مع الاماكن في هذا النوع فقط ولا تستخدم مع جمل الوصل غير المحددة.

**Non-defining relative clauses :** جمل الوصل غير المحددة

شبه الجملة الموصولة غير المحددة يمكن حذفها من الجملة لان معنى الجملة لا يتاثر فهي تقدم معلومة اضافية او غير ضرورية .  
**unnecessary information** و تتحدث عن شيء او شخص واحد فقط.

- My brother, who lives in Amman, is a doctor.
- The driver, who caused the accident, was speaking on his mobile.
- The Sahara desert, which is in Africa, is very hot.

**تمارين الكتاب**

4/ SB, page 30 :

Read the passage below and answer the questions.

**The Giralda**

The Giralda tower, which is one of the most important buildings in Seville ,Spain at just over 104 metres tall. The person who is believed to be responsible for the design of the tower, which was originally a minaret, is the mathematician and astronomer Jabir ibn Aflah. The architect of the tower was Ahmad Ben Baso, who began work in 1184 CE. He died before the tower was completed in 1198 CE. The design of the tower is believed to be based on the Koutoubia Mosque, which is in Marrakesh, Morocco, and the Hassan Tower in Rabat.

1. Identify the defining and non-defining relative clauses in the text.

.....

.....

.....

.....

2. What relative pronouns do we use for the things in the box?

**People, animals and things, places**

.....

.....

.....

5/ SB, page 31 :

Complete the text with the correct word from the box. Sometimes, more than one answer is possible.

**that ,which, where, who**

Qasr Bashir is an extremely well-preserved Roman castle (1)..... is situated in the Jordanian desert, and is about eighty kilometres south of Amman. The walls and huge corner towers of the castle, (2)..... was built at the beginning of the fourth century CE, are still standing. It is thought that Qasr Bashir was built to protect the Roman border. Apart from the rooms in the castle, there are also about twenty-three stables (3)..... horses may have been kept. People (4)..... love exploring historical Roman ruins will certainly find a visit to Qasr Bashir very rewarding. Once inside the building, one can imagine very vividly what it would have been like to live there during the times of the Roman Empire.

4/ AB, page 21 :

Match the beginnings with the correct endings and join them with a relative pronoun. Then, write the sentences out in full. The first one is done for you.

- |   |                                   |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1. A mathematician is someone ...           | a. are studied by mathematicians. |
| 2. Geometry and arithmetic are subjects ... | b. means 'doctor'.                |
| 3. 'Physician' is an old-fashioned word ... | c. works with numbers.            |
| 4. A chemist is a person ....               | d. astronomers study.             |
| 5. The stars and planets are things ...     | e. works in a laboratory.         |

**1. c: A mathematician is someone who works with numbers.**

2. ....
3. ....
4. ....
5. ....

4/ AB, page 21 :

Complete the text about Ibn Sina, using the relative pronouns in the box. One pronoun is used twice. Add commas for the non-defining relative clauses.

**that, when, which, who**

Ibn Sina ..... (1) is also known as Avicenna was a polymath. Ibn Sina was influenced as a young man by the works of the philosopher Aristotle. He wrote on early Islamic philosophy (2) ..... included many subjects, especially logic and ethics. He also wrote *Al Qanun fi Tibb*, the book (3) ..... became the most famous medical textbook ever. In the last ten or twelve years of his life, Ibn Sina started studying literary matters. His friends (4) ..... were worried about his health advised him to relax. He refused and told them 'I prefer a short life with width to a narrow one with length.' It was the month of Ramadan (5)..... Ibn Sina died, in June 1037 CE.

ملاحظة : جمل الوصل غير المحددة تبدأ بصفة ملكية مثل ( his /her/ my/ their/ our/ your/ its ) او صفة اشارة مثل ( this/that/these/those ) او اسم علم .

The word (s)	English Meaning	Arabic Meaning
arithmetic	the branch of mathematics concerned with numerical calculations such as addition, subtraction, multiplication and division	علم الحساب
algebra	a type of mathematics system where letters and symbols are used to represent numbers	علم الجبر
geometry	the branch of mathematics concerned with the properties, relationships and measurement of points, lines, curves and surfaces	علم الهندسة
mathematician	a person who studies Mathematics to a very complex level	عالم رياضيات
philosopher	someone who studies and writes philosophy professionally, or an undergraduate student of Philosophy	فيلسوف
physician	someone qualified to practise medicine, especially one who specializes in diagnosis and treatment	طبيب
polymath	someone who has a lot of knowledge about many different subjects	متعدد الثقافات
composition	a piece of music that someone has written	تأليف موسيقي
musical harmony	pleasant sound in music, made by playing or singing a group of different notes together	إيقاع موسيقي متناغم
revolutionise	to completely change the way people do something or think about something	يقوم بثورة بهدف التغيير
windmill	a building that uses its sails and wind power to grind corn into flour	طاحونة حبوب
inoculation	an injection you can have to protect you from a disease	مطعم وقائي
artificially created	not real or not made of natural things but made to be like something that is real or natural	نسخه صناعية مطابقه للحقيقة
carbon – neutral	not affecting the total amount of carbon dioxide in Earth's atmosphere	متعادل كربونيا (لا يزيد من كمية الكربون بالجو)
criticise	to judge (something) with disapproval; to evaluate or analyse	ينتقد
desalination	the process of removing salt from sea water so that it can be used	تحلية المياه
grid	[energy grid] a system of wires through which electricity is connected to different power stations across a region	شبكة تمديدات كهربائية
megaproject	a very large, expensive, ambitious business project	مشروع ضخم
out weigh	to be more important than something else	أكثر أهمية
pedestrian	someone who is walking, especially along a street or another place that is used by cars	المشاة
sustainability	the state of being able to continue forever, or for a very long time; for example, the sustainability of the environment involves emitting less pollution and using less water	استدامة
irrigate	to supply land with water so that crops and plants will grow	يروي - يسقي
zero waste	producing no waste, or having parts that can be reused	خال من النفايات
inheritance	money or things that you get from someone after they die	ميراث

ground - breaking	new, innovative	مبدع / خلاق
fountain pen	a pen which needs ink cartridge refills and the nib of which takes ink from these cartridge to write.	قلم حبر سائل
commitment	a promise to do something or to behave in a particular way	التزام
talent	special ability	موهبة
scale	an instrument to measure weight	ميزان
laboratory	a room for science experiments	مختبر
founder	a person who start something new	مؤسس
legacy	what someone leaves to the world after their death	تركة
fertile land	produced more than enough food	ارض خصبة
hands on	field working / working by hand	عمل ميداني / عمل يدوي

### COLLOCATIONS

carbon footprint	اثر الكربون
biological waste	نفايات حيوية
economic growth	نمو اقتصادي
urban planning	تخطيط حضري / عمراني
negative effect	تأثير سلبي
public transport	مواصلات عامة

### تمارين الكتاب

4/ SB, page 33 :

Look at the nouns in the box. Which adjectives collocate with them? Write them next to the adjectives.

**growth ,effect, transport, footprint, waste, planning**

1. urban 2. public 3. biological 4. carbon 5. negative 6. economic

1. .... 2. .... 3. ....  
4. .... 5. .... 6. ....

5/ SB, page 33 :

Complete the sentences with the correct collocations from exercise 4.

- When people talk about ....., they can mean either an improvement in the average standard of living, or an increase in the value of a country's products.
- Pollution has some serious ..... on the environment, such as the death of wildlife and plant life.
- We can all work hard to reduce our ..... by living a more environmentally-friendly lifestyle.
- If we take ..... more often, there will be fewer cars on the roads, which will result in cleaner air in our cities.
- Hospitals need to dispose of a lot of ....., and it should be carefully managed because it can be dangerous.
- The need for more effective ..... is evident when we consider modern day problems like traffic.

1/ WB, page 20 :

Complete the sentences with the words in the box. One word is not needed.  
The first one is done for you.

**philosopher ,arithmetic, polymath, chemist, geometry, mathematician , physician**

1. My father teaches Maths. He's a **mathematician**.
2. You must not take in medicine without consulting a .....
3. We learn about shapes, lines and angles when we study .....
4. Mr Shahin is a true ....., working in all kinds of creative and scientific fields.
5. Ramzi is very good with numbers and calculations. He always scores high in.....
6. A .....is someone who thinks and writes about the meaning of life.

2/ WB, page 20 :

Match the words with the correct definitions. One definition is not needed. The first one is done for you.

1.talent <b>g</b> _	<b>a.</b> an expert in many subjects
2. founder ____	<b>b.</b> a room for scientific experiments
3. scales ____	<b>c.</b> the person who starts something new, such as an organisation or a city
4. polymath ____	<b>d.</b> an instrument to measure weight
5. arithmetic ____	<b>e.</b> an engineer
6. laboratory ____	<b>f.</b> the study of numbers
	<b>g.</b> special ability

10/ WB, page 23 :

Complete the sentences with words from the box. One word is not needed.

**benefit, farms, footprint, free, friendly,  
neutral, pedestrian, power, renewable, waste**

1. In hot countries, solar ..... is an important source of energy.
2. 'Green' projects are environmentally..... .
3. Wind ..... are an example of ..... energy.
4. If a city recycles everything and doesn't throw anything away, it is zero- .....
5. We burn carbon whenever we use oil, coal or gas. This is known as our carbon.....
6. If we replace as much carbon as we burn, we are carbon-..... .
7. A place where no cars are allowed is a car-..... zone, and it is..... friendly.

**The importance of Islamic achievements in history****KEY WORDS**

The word (s)	English Meaning	Arabic Meaning
algebra	a type of mathematics system where letters and symbols are used to represent numbers	علم الجبر
arithmetic	the branch of mathematics concerned with numerical calculations such as addition, subtraction, multiplication and division	علم الحساب
geometry	the branch of mathematics concerned with the properties, relationships and measurement of points, lines, curves and surfaces	علم الهندسة
mathematician	a person who studies Mathematics to a very complex level	عالم رياضيات
inheritance	money or things that you get from someone after they die	ميراث
philosopher	someone who studies and writes philosophy professionally, or an undergraduate student of Philosophy	فيلسوف
physician	someone qualified to practise medicine, especially one who specializes in diagnosis and treatment	طبيب
polymath	someone who has a lot of knowledge about many different subjects	متعدد الثقافات
musical harmony	pleasant sound in music, made by playing or singing a group of different notes together	إيقاع موسيقي متناغم
revolutionise	to completely change the way people do something or think about something	يقوم بثورة بهدف التغيير
ground - breaking	new, innovative	مبدع / خلاق

**Jabir ibn Hayyan (born 722 CE, died 815 CE)**

The Arab world has many famous chemists in its history, but the person who is known as the founder of chemistry is probably Jabir ibn Hayyan. He is most well known for the beginning of the production of sulphuric acid. He also built a set of scales which changed the way in which chemists weighed items in a laboratory: his scales could weigh items over 6,000 times smaller than a kilogram.

وجد في العالم العربي العديد من الكيميائيين عبر تاريخه، لكن الشخص المعروف بأنه مؤسس الكيمياء ربما يكون جابر بن حيان. إنه الأكثر شهرة لبدايته إنتاج حامض الكبريت. كما وضع موازين غيرت الطريقة التي كان الكيميائيون يزنون الأشياء بها في المختبر: موازينه أمكنها أن تزن أشياء وزنها أقل من 6000 ضعف الكيلوغرام.

**Ali ibn Nafi ' (Ziryab) (born 789 CE, died 857 CE)**

Ali ibn Nafi ' is also known as 'Ziryab' (or 'Blackbird', because of his beautiful voice). He was a gifted pupil of a famous musician from Baghdad, and it was his talent for music that led him to Cordoba in the ninth century CE. He was the guest of the Umayyad ruler **there**. He is the person who established the first music school in the world in Cordoba, Al-Andalus, teaching musical harmony and composition. He revolutionised musical theory, and is also the person who introduced the oud to Europe.

علي بن نافع يعرف أيضا "زرياب" أو ( الطائر الأسود ) بسبب جمال صوته . كان تلميذا موهوبا لأحد الموسيقيين في بغداد, و كانت موهبته في الموسيقى هي التي قادتته إلى قرطبة في القرن التاسع م . كان ضيفا على الخليفة الأموي هناك . هو أول شخص أسس أول مدرسة موسيقية في قرطبة, في الأندلس , تعلم العزف و التأليف الموسيقيين . طور النظرية الموسيقية, و هو أيضا الشخص الذي ادخل العود إلى أوروبا.

**Fatima al-Fihri (born early 9th century, died 880 CE)**

Fatima al-Fihri was the daughter of a wealthy businessman. She used her father's inheritance to build a learning centre in Fez, Morocco. This learning centre became Morocco's top university, and it is where many students from all over the world come to study. Moreover, it was Fatima's sister, Mariam, who supervised the building of the Andalus Mosque, **which** was not far from the learning centre.

فاطمة الفهري كانت ابنة لرجل أعمال ثري . استغلّت ميراث والدها لإنشاء مركز تعلم في فاس في المغرب . مركز التعلم هذا أصبح ارقى جامعة مغربية, حيث العديد من الطلاب من كل أنحاء العالم للدراسة. أيضا , أخت فاطمة و هي مريم أشرفت على بناء مسجد الأندلس الذي لم يكن بعيدا عن مركز التعلم

**Al-Kindi (born around 801 CE, died 873 CE)**

Al-Kindi was a physician, philosopher, **mathematician**, chemist, musician and astronomer – a true polymath. He made ground-breaking discoveries in many of these fields, but it is probably **his** work in arithmetic and geometry that has made him most famous.

الكندي كان طبيبا و فيلسوفا و عالم رياضيات و كيميائي و موسيقي – عالم شامل حقيقي . حقق اكتشافات جذرية في العديد من هذه الحقول, لكن ربما عمله في علم الحساب و الهندسة هو الذي جعله الأكثر شهرة.

**تمارين الكتاب**

4/ SB, page 29 :

Listen to and read the article again. Working in pairs, summarise the achievements of the four people in the text.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

4/ SB, page 29 :

Do you think that it was easier or more difficult in those days to reach such high levels of achievement in comparison with the present day? Give a reason for your opinion.

.....

.....

.....

**COMPREHENSION TEST**

1. There were many achievements that Jabir ibn Hayyan made. Write down two of them.  
.....

2. Al-Kindi made his fame by working in two main fields . Write them down.  
.....

3. why was Ali bin nafi' called the "Black bird" ?  
.....

4. Write down the sentence which indicates that Fatima's learning centre is very successful.  
.....  
.....

5. Fatima built a learning centre in Fez. How did she manage to do that?  
.....

6. What does the underlined word "**mathematician**" in the last paragraph, mean?  
.....

7. Find a word in the text which means "**someone who has a lot of knowledge about many different subjects**"  
.....

8. What do the underlined words ( pronouns) refer to?  
.....

**Critical Thinking :**

1. The writer states that Muslim scientists made many great achievements . Explain this statement , mentioning three fields that Muslim scientists influenced greatly in them.  
.....  
.....

2. In ancient times, reaching such high levels of achievements in comparison with the present days is more difficult. Think of this statement, and in two sentences, write down your point of view.  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

## Masdar City – a positive step?

### KEY WORDS

The word	English Meaning	Arabic Meaning
artificially created	not real or not made of natural things but made to be like something that is real or natural	نسخه صناعية مطابقه للحقيقة
carbon – neutral	not affecting the total amount of carbon dioxide in Earth's atmosphere	متعادل كربونيا (لا يزيد من كمية الكربون بالجو)
commitment	a promise to do something or to behave in a particular way	التزام
criticise	to judge (something) with disapproval; to evaluate or analyse	ينتقد
desalination	the process of removing salt from sea water so that it can be used	تحلية المياه
megaproject	a very large, expensive, ambitious business project	مشروع ضخم
out weigh	to be more important than something else	أكثر أهميه
pedestrian	someone who is walking, especially along a street or another place that is used by cars	المشاة
sustainability	the state of being able to continue forever, or for a very long time; for example, the sustainability of the environment involves emitting less pollution and using less water	استدامة
grid	[energy grid] a system of wires through which electricity is connected to different power stations across a region	شبكة تمديدات كهربائية
zero waste	producing no waste, or having parts that can be reused	خال من النفايات

Megaprojects are extremely large investment projects, which are designed to encourage economic growth and bring new benefits to cities. Although megaprojects vary in terms of size and cost, **they** are all, by definition, expensive, public projects that attract a high level of interest and media coverage. Projects range from motorways, airports, stations, tunnels, bridges, etc. to entire city complexes.

المشاريع الضخمة هي استثمارات ضخمة مصممة لتشجيع النمو الاقتصادي و تجلب فوائد جديدة للمدن. رغم أن المشاريع الضخمة تختلف في الحجم و التكلفة، إلا أنها كلها، مكلفة و مشاريع عامة تجذب مستوى عالي من الاهتمام و التغطية الإعلامية. المشاريع الضخمة تتراوح بين طرق و مطارات و محطات قطار و أنفاق و جسور... الخ إلى مجتمعات مدن كاملة.

The concept of a megaproject is always based on the benefits it brings to a community.

However, many megaprojects have been criticised because of their negative effects on a community or the environment. This essay will look at these issues with regard to Masdar City, a megaproject in Abu Dhabi.

فكرة المشاريع الضخمة دائما قائمة على الفوائد التي ستجلبها للمجتمع. على أي حال، العديد من المشاريع الضخمة تم انتقادها بسبب أثرها السلبي على المجتمع أو البيئة. هذه المقالة ستبحث في هذه القضايا بالإشارة إلى مدينة مصدر، و هي مشروع ضخم في أبو ظبي

**Masdar City, which began its development in 2006 CE, will be the world's first carbon-neutral, zero-waste artificially-created city. Covering an area of six square kilometres, when it is completed in 2025 CE, it is expected to house more than 40,000 residents, 50,000**

**commuters, and 1,500 businesses involved in mainly environmentally-friendly products.** مدينة مصدر, التي بدأ تطورها عام 2006, ستكون أول مدينة تم إنشائها اصطناعيا خالية من مخلفات الكربون في العالم. تغطي مساحة 6 كم مربع عندما تكتمل عام 2025 م, يتوقع أن تضم أكثر من 40,000 مقيم و 50,000 متنقل 1,500 قطاع أعمال تنتج بشكل رئيسي منتجات صديقة للبيئة.

**The city will run entirely on renewable energy sources. It is built on an advanced energy grid which monitors exactly how much electricity is being used by every outlet in the complex.**

**Furthermore, in order to reduce its carbon footprint, Masdar City will be a car-free zone, designed to be pedestrian and cycle-friendly. Electric, driverless cars will operate as public**

**transport vehicles, and the city will be connected to other locations by a network of roads and railways.**

المدينة ستدار بالكامل بمصادر الطاقة المتجددة. مبنية على شبكة من خطوط الطاقة المتقدمة التي تراقب كم من الكهرباء يتم استهلاكه من قبل كل مخرج في المجمع. أيضا, من اجل تقليل اثر مخرجات الكربون, مدينة مصدر ستكون خالية من السيارات, مصممة لان تكون صديقة للمشاة و راكبي الدراجات. سيارات كهربائية و بدون سائق ستعمل كوسائل نقل عامة, و المدينة ستكون موصولة بالمواقع الأخرى بشبكة من الطرق و السكك الحديدية.

**Energy will be provided by solar power and wind farms, and there are also plans to build the world's largest hydrogen plant. A desalination plant will be used to provide the city's water, with 80% of water used being recycled. Biological waste will be used as an energy source too,**

**and industrial waste will be recycled.**

الطاقة سيتم التزود بها من الطاقة الشمسية و مزارع الرياح, و هناك أيضا خطط لإنشاء أضخم محطة هيدروجين. محطة لتحلية مياه البحر ستستخدم لتزويد المدينة بالماء, مع تكرير 80% من الماء. المخلفات الحيوية ستستخدم كمصدر للطاقة أيضا, و المخلفات الصناعية سيتم تكريرها.

**The current residents of Masdar City are all students at the Masdar Institute of Science and Technology, a university whose students are fully committed to finding solutions to the world's energy problems.**

المقيمون الحاليون في مدينة مصدر كلهم طلاب في معهد مصدر للعلوم و التكنولوجيا, جامعة طلابها ملتزمون تماما لإيجاد حلول لمشاكل الطاقة العالمية.

**While the project has the support of many global, environmental and conservation organisations, there is some criticism of it. It is felt that, instead of building an artificial sustainable city, sustainability should be made a priority of existing cities.**

فيما يلقي المشروع دعم العديد من منظمات حماية البيئة, هناك بعض الانتقاد لها. يقال انه, و بدلا من إنشاء مدينة مستدامة صناعيا, الاستدامة يجب أن تكون أولوية للمدن القائمة بالفعل.

**In conclusion, the benefits of Masdar City for the community and the environment greatly outweigh any disadvantages. If the aims of the developers are realised, Masdar City will be a**

**blueprint for future urban planning that will inspire similar megaprojects in other countries.**

في الخلاصة, فواند مدينة مصدر للمجتمع و البيئة تفوق و بشكل كبير أي سينات. إذا تم إدراك هدف المطورين, فان مدينة مصدر ستكون قدوة للتخطيط الحضري المستقبلي الذي سيهلم مشاريع ضخمة شبيهة في بلدان أخرى.

تمارين الكتاب

1/ SB, page 32 :

What are the advantages and disadvantages of megaprojects to people and the environment?

.....  
.....  
.....

3 / SB, page 33 :

Read the essay on page again and answer the questions.

1. What examples of megaprojects are provided in the essay?

.....  
.....

2. What are the advantages of the creation of Masdar City? What are the disadvantages?

.....  
.....  
.....

3. Do you think that Masdar City is a beneficial project or not? Give your reasons.

.....  
.....  
.....

COMPREHENSION TEST

1. Megaprojects are designed for two certain purposes. Write down these two purposes.

.....  
.....

2. Write down the sentence which indicates that not all Megaprojects are similar.

.....  
.....

3. There are many types of megaprojects. Write down two of them.

.....  
.....

4. Because Masdar city will be a car-free city, the city has been designed to have different types of transportation. Write down two of them.

.....  
.....

5. Masdar city has a unique quality that makes it the first city of its kind. Write down that quality.

.....  
.....

6. Who are the current residents of Masdar city?

.....  
.....

7. Find a word in the text which means “ **judged (something) with disapproval; evaluated or analysed**”.

.....  
.....

8. What do the underlined words ( pronouns) refer to?

.....  
.....

Critical Thinking :

1. The writer thinks that mega projects should have many purposes in order to be attractive and popular. Explain this statement, suggesting three purposes of such projects.

.....  
.....  
.....

2. Masdar city is a beneficial project for the community and environment. Think of this statement, and in two sentences, write down your point of view.

.....  
.....  
.....

## A founding father of farming

### KEY WORDS

The word (s)	English Meaning	Arabic Meaning
founder	a person who start something new	مؤسس
legacy	what someone leaves to the world after their death	تركة
fertile land	produced more than enough food	ارض خصبة
hands on	field working / working by hand	عمل ميداني / عمل يدوي
irrigate	to supply land with water so that crops and plants will grow	يروى / يسقي

Ibn Bassal was a writer, a scientist and an engineer who lived in Al-Andalus in the eleventh century CE. He worked in the court of Al-Ma'mun, **who** was the King of Toledo; His great passions were botany, which is the study of plants, and agriculture. Although he was a great scholar, he was also a practical man and all of his writing came from his own **'hands-on'** experience of working the land.

ابن البصال كان كاتباً و عالماً و مهندساً عاش في الأندلس في القرن الحادي عشر م . عمل في بلاط المأمون ملك طليطلة . كان مولعاً في علم النبات , و هو العلم الذي يدرس النبات , و الزراعة . رغم انه كان عالماً عظيماً, إلا انه كان رجلاً عملياً و كل كتاباته جاءت من تجربته الميدانية في فلاحة الأرض.

One of the many things which Ibn Bassal achieved was *A Book of Agriculture*. The book consisted of sixteen chapters **which** explain how best to grow trees, fruit and vegetables, as well as herbs and sweet-smelling flowers. Perhaps the most famous chapter of all was the one that described how to treat different types of soil. Ibn Bassal also worked out how to irrigate the land by finding underground water and digging wells. He designed water pumps and irrigation systems. All of these things were passed on through his writing.

احد الأشياء العديدة التي حققها ابن البصال كان كتاباً بعنوان كتاب الزراعة . الكتاب تكون من 16 فصلاً توضح أفضل طرق زراعة الأشجار و الفواكه و الخضروات , و كذلك الأعشاب و الإزهار زكية الرائحة , لعل أشهر الفصول كلها هو الفصل الذي وصف كيف تتعامل مع الأنواع المختلفة للتربة . ابن البصال أيضاً عرف كيف يروي الأرض من المياه الجوفية و حفر الآبار . صمم مضخات مياه و أنظمة ري . كل هذه الأشياء ذكرها في كتاباته.

The influence of Ibn Bassal's book was enormous. As farmers down the generations followed his instructions and advice, the land became wonderfully fertile and produced more than enough food for the fast-growing population. The irrigation systems **that** he and his followers put in place are still in evidence in Spain. Although his name is not widely known, Ibn Bassal's legacy to the world has been great.

تأثير كتاب ابن البصال كان عظيماً . كلما اتبع المزارعون عبر الأجيال تعليماته و نصيحته , كلما أصبحت الأرض خصبة و أنتجت أكثر مما يكفي من الطعام لعدد السكان المتزايد . أنظمة الري التي وضعها هو و أتباعه في الخدمة ما زالت عاملة في اسبانيا . رغم أن اسمه ليس معروفاً كثيراً , إلا أن تركة ابن البصال للعالم كانت عظيمة .

9/ WB, page 22 :

Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Name two of Ibn Bassal’s achievements.

.....

2. Find a verb in the second paragraph that means ‘supply land with water’.

.....

3. Guess the meaning of ‘fertile land’ in the third paragraph. Which part of the text illustrates its meaning?

.....

4. Guess the meaning of ‘legacy’ in the third paragraph. What does the author suggest is Ibn Bassal’s legacy to the world?

.....

5. Which paragraph suggests that Ibn Bassal was a polymath? Give examples of his areas of knowledge.

.....

6. Why do you think the area around Toledo had a ‘fast-growing population’?

.....

.....

.....

COMPREHENSION TEST

1. Ibn Bassal was specialised in two fields . Write them down ?

.....

2. Where can Ibn Bassal’s achievements be seen today?

.....

3. Ibn Bassal used many ways to irrigate the land. Write down two of them.

.....

4. Write down the sentence which indicates that Ibn Bassal was a polymath.

.....

5. Quote the sentence which shows the most important part of Ibn Bassal’s book.

.....

6. What does the underlined phrase hands on mean?

.....

7. What do the underlined words ( pronouns) refer to?

.....

8. Ibn Bassal explained how to grow many types of trees and plants. Write down two of them.

.....

Critical Thinking :

1. The writer states that when farmers followed Ibn Bassal’s instructions and advice the land produced enough food for the fast-growing population. Explain this sentence, suggesting three ways in which farmers can increase the productivity of the land in Jordan.

.....

.....

.....

2. The area around Toledo had a fast-growing population . Think of this statement and, in two sentences, write down your point of view.

.....

.....

.....

**UNIT FOUR**  
**Success stories**  
**MODEL ANSWERS**

**Grammar**

**Cleft Sentences**

تمارين الكتاب

6/ SB, page 29 :

1. b    2. c    2. a

7/ SB, page 29 :

1. The person who invented the mechanical clock in the twelfth century was Al-Jazari.  
OR It was Al-Jazari who/that invented the mechanical clock in the twelfth century.
2. The thing that Al-Jazari invented in the twelfth century was the mechanical clock.  
OR It was the mechanical clock that Al-Jazari invented in the twelfth century.
3. The period/time when Al-Jazari invented the mechanical clock was the twelfth century.  
OR It was in the twelfth century that Al-Jazari invented the mechanical clock.

8/ SB, page 29 :

1. The person who contributed to the invention of the oud was Al-Kindi.
2. The country where Jabir ibn Hayyan did his research in a laboratory was Iraq.
3. It was Ali ibn Nafi' who established the first music school in the world.
4. It was Jabir ibn Hayyan who/that also invented ink that can be read in the dark.
5. It is for his work in geometry that Al-Kindi is especially famous.

3/ WB, page 20 :

2. when/in which Petra was made a World Heritage Site was 1985 CE
3. 11 p.m. when I stopped working
4. who/that has influenced me most is my father
5. that/which I like most of all is Geography
6. the heat that/which made the journey unpleasant

**Revision of relative clauses**

تمارين الكتاب

4/ SB, page 30 :

1.  
who is believed to be responsible for the design of the tower, ( defining )  
,who began work in 1184 CE. ( non-defining )  
, which was originally a minaret, ( non-defining )  
, which is in Marrakesh, Morocco, , which is one of the most important buildings in Seville, ,Spain  
( non-defining )

2. - people : who / that    animals and things : which    places : where

5/ SB, page 31 :

1. which/that    2. which    3. where    4. who/that

4/ AB, page 21 :

2. a: Geometry and arithmetic are subjects that/which are studied by mathematicians.
3. b: 'Physician' is an old-fashioned word that/which means 'doctor'.
4. e: A chemist is a person who/that works in a laboratory.
5. d: The stars and planets are things that/which astronomers study.

4/ AB, page 21 :

1. , who is also known as Avicenna, 2. , which included many subjects, 3. That 4. , who were worried about his health, 5 when

## Vocabulary

### تمارين الكتاب

4/ SB, page 33 :

1. urban planning
2. public transport
3. biological waste
4. carbon footprint
5. negative effect
6. economic growth

5/ SB, page 33 :

1. economic growth
2. negative effect
3. carbon footprint
4. public transport
5. biological waste
6. urban planning

1/ WB, page 20 :

1. mathematician
2. physician
3. geometry
4. polymath
5. arithmetic
6. philosopher

2/ WB, page 20 :

1. g
2. c
3. d
4. a
5. f
6. b

10/ WB, page 23 :

1. power
2. friendly
3. farms; renewable
4. waste
5. footprint
6. neutral
7. free; pedestrian

## Reading

### *The importance of Islamic achievements in history*

### تمارين الكتاب

4/ SB, page 29 :

- Jabir ibn Hayyan is known as the founder of chemistry. He began the production of sulphuric acid and invented scales that could weigh very light things.
- Ali ibn Nafi ' established the first music school in the world in Cordoba, Al-Andalus, and introduced the oud to Europe.
- Fatima al-Fihri built a learning centre in Morocco, which became a world famous university
- Al-Kindi was a polymath, most famous for his work in arithmetic and geometry.

4/ SB, page 29 :

I think that it was more difficult for people in the past to reach such high levels of achievement in comparison with the present day: there was much less access to information in the past, so people like Al-Kindi had to be truly revolutionary and creative in their thinking in order to succeed.

### COMPREHENSION TEST

1. He is most well known for the beginning of the production of sulphuric acid. He also built a set of scales which changed the way in which chemists weighed items in a laboratory .
2. arithmetic and geometry.
3. Because of his beautiful voice.
4. This learning centre became Morocco's top university, and it is where many students from all over the world come to study.
5. She used her father's inheritance to build a learning centre in Fez, Morocco.
6. a person who studies Mathematics to a very complex level.
7. polymath
8. there : Cordoba /which : the building of the Andalus Mosque/his : Al-Kindi

Critical Thinking :

1. There are many fields that Muslim scientists influenced greatly in them like medicine and geography . Also, they had influence on the area of farming.
2. I think that in ancient times, reaching such high levels of achievements in comparison with the present days is more difficult because there was great difficulty to access information. Also, if someone wanted to innovate something he had to make hard efforts to achieve his ambition.

## Masdar City – a positive step?

### تمارين الكتاب

1/ SB, page 32 :

Disadvantages are that they are all brand new and some people think it would be better to spend the money on regenerating old towns, etc. However, the advantages include installing the latest technology that helps cities to become environmentally- friendly.

3 / SB, page 33 :

1. Examples of projects include motorways, airports, stations, tunnels, bridges and entire city complexes.
2. The advantages include the fact that it will be the world's first carbon-neutral, zero-waste city. It will also be a car-free zone, although there will be excellent public transport. The disadvantage is that existing cities are nowhere near as environmentally clean, and many people think the money should have been spent on cleaning up existing places and making them more sustainable.
3. I think Masdar City is a beneficial project because it is designed to encourage economic growth and bring new benefits to cities. Also it will inspire other cities to be environmentally friendly.

### COMPREHENSION TEST

1. to encourage economic growth and bring new benefits to cities.
2. Although megaprojects vary in terms of size and cost, they are all, by definition, expensive, public projects that attract a high level of interest and media coverage.
3. motorways, airports
4. Electric, driverless cars and cycling
5. Masdar City, which began its development in 2006 CE, will be the world's first carbon-neutral, zero-waste artificially-created city.
6. students at the Masdar Institute of Science and Technology.
7. criticised
8. they : megaprojects /whose : a university / It : the city (Masdar City)

Critical Thinking :

1. There are many purposes of such projects. For example, they can be popular attraction and combines educational value with scientific interest. Also, they can be centres for research and experiments.
2. I think that Masdar city is a beneficial project for the community and environment. For example, it will depend on renewable resources and will reduce carbon footprint .  
Eventually , this will save natural resources and keep the environment zero-waste.

## A founding father of farming

### تمارين الكتاب

9/ WB, page 22 :

1. writing *A Book of Agriculture*; designing water pumps and irrigation systems
2. irrigate
3. agriculturally productive; 'produced more than enough
4. 'Legacy' means what someone leaves to the world food after their death. Ibn Bassal's legacy is his agricultural instructions and advice.
5. the first paragraph: writing, science, engineering, botany, agriculture
6. Suggested answer: I think that the area around Toledo had a fast-growing population for two reasons. Firstly, I think that many people would want to live around Toledo, and Al-Andalus in general, at that time because Al-Andalus was a very prosperous place. Secondly, because the area was producing a lot of food as a result of Ibn Bassal's irrigation systems, people would be healthier and more able to provide for more children than they could before.

### COMPREHENSION TEST

1. botany and agriculture.
2. In Spain.
3. finding underground water and digging wells
4. Ibn Bassal was a writer, a scientist and an engineer who lived in Al-Andalus in the eleventh century CE.
5. Perhaps the most famous chapter of all was the one that described how to treat different types of soil.
6. field working / working by hand.
7. who: Al-Ma'mun / which : sixteen chapters/ that : The irrigation systems
8. herbs and sweet-smelling flowers.

#### Critical Thinking :

1. There are many three ways in which farmers can increase the productivity of the land in Jordan like providing advance irrigation systems and using modern methods of farming. Also, they can avoid over cultivation in order not to exhaust the soil.
2. I think that The area around Toledo had a fast-growing population because it was very prosperous place producing a lot of food as a result of Ibn Bassal's irrigation systems. As a result , people could be healthier and more able to provide healthy atmosphere to their children.

## UNIT FIVE

### The arts

#### Grammar

#### Articles

#### 1. Non- defining articles: a/an/ or - no articles : ادوات التنكير

##### \*\* a / an :

We use **a** before singular countable noun اسم معدود مفرد that begin with consonant verbally ثابت لفظيا

\*\* **a book / a car / a student/ a man / a woman .....etc**

We use **an** before singular countable noun اسم معدود مفرد that begin with vowels.[a, e, i, o, u] verbally علة لفظيا

\*\* **an elephant / an apple/ an orange / an hour/ an umbrella .... etc**

We usually use **a / an** before countable noun اسم معدود when we are mentioning نذكره it for the first time.

\*\*\* Hassan lives in **a** big house. There is **a** garden next to it with **an** apple tree.

• However, if we are talking about something that the listener/reader knows about, we use **the**.

\*\*\* Hassan lives in **the** big house near **the** post office. **The** garden is beautiful./

I met **an** old man yesterday . **The** old man was wearing strange clothes.

• We use **a / an** when we are talking about someone's job. وظيفة شخص ما

\*\*\* Joory is **a** doctor . / Jood is **an** engineer.

• We use **a / an** before the following words : **an** hour / **a** day / **a** week / **a** month / **a** year

\*\*\* We pray five times **a** day. / I have been waiting here for **an** hour.

• We use **a** with plural nouns like : herd / box/ group / bunch/ bundle/ series / pack/ variety

\*\*\* I saw **a** herd of cows. / He gave her **a** bunch of flowers.

##### \*\* no article ( x ) :

• We use no article with uncountable غير معدود and plural جمع nouns, and for general statements . العبارات العامة

\*\*\* Chocolate tastes good. / That shop sells sweets. / Children usually like sweets and chocolate. / Sheep produce wool, and hens lay eggs.

• We use no article with meals : breakfast / lunch / supper/ dinner

\*\*\* I don't usually have **breakfast** at home.

• We use no article with these words : home / bed / work

\*\*\* We are going **home** now.

● We use no article with means of transport : by car / by bus / by train / by ship / by bicycle / on horseback / on foot.

\*\*\* We go to school by **bus**.

● We use no article with nationality adjective ( صفة الجنسية ):

\*\*\* **Brazilian** coffee is very delicious .

ملاحظة : إذا كان المقصود شعب تلك الدولة : **the**

\*\*\* **The Chinese** like rice.

● We use no article with sport games: football / volleyball/ swimming / skiing .

\*\*\* **Football** is the most common in the world.

● We use no article with the following times of day and night : dawn / night/ midnight/ sunrise / noon.

\*\*\* I get up at **dawn** every day.

ملاحظة : تستخدم **the** مع العبارات التالية : in the morning / in the afternoon / in the evening :

\*\*\* She wakes up early in the **morning** .

● We use no article before most countries , اللغات , continents القارات , languages الدول , individual mountains الجبال الفردية (but **NOT mountain ranges** السلاسل الجبلية ) , lakes البحيرات , waterfalls الشلالات , cities المدن , streets الشوارع , days الايام , months الأشهر and years السنوات .

\*\*\* The language spoken in Jordan is **Arabic**.

**Libya** is in **Africa**. / He was the first man to climb **Mount Everest** in the Himalayas./

They have a home near **Lake Geneva**./ **Niagara Falls** separates Canada from the USA.

They live in **Oxford Street** in London. / She was born on **Monday**, 23 April./

The university was opened in **2001 CE**.

\*\*\* ملاحظة : تستخدم **the** مع اسماء الدول التي تحتوي على كلمات مثل **Emirates/ Union/ State/ Republic / Kingdom**

او الدول التي تكتب بصيغة الجمع مثل **The Netherlands / The Philippines**

\*\*\* The United **States** of America / The United Arab **Emirates** / The Hashemite **Kingdom** of Jordan / The Czech **Republic**

## 2. Defining articles: **the**: أدوات التعريف

● We use **the** when we are talking about something that is unique فريد من نوعه.: **the Earth / the Sun**

\*\*\* The **Earth** goes round the Sun. / She's the **only woman** to have won two Nobel Prizes.

● We use **the** when we are talking about seas البحار , oceans المحيطات , rivers الأنهار , groups of islands مجموعات الجزر (but **NOT individual islands**) , mountain ranges السلاسل الجبلية and countries that include **the** in their name.

\*\*\* The **Mediterranean Sea** separates Europe from Africa./ Sri Lanka is in the **Indian Ocean**./

They took a boat trip along the **river Nile**./ Mallorca is one of the **Balearic Islands**./

The Rocky Mountains are in the **United States**.

● We use **the** when we are talking about superlative adjectives: ( most / est / best ).

\*\*\* The **longest** river in the USA is the Mississippi.

● We use **the** when we are talking about musical instruments : the piano / the oud / the guitar / the violin/ the drum / the flute .

\*\*\* She plays the **piano** well.

● We use **the** when we are talking about specific groups **مجموعات محددة** of people : the young / the blind / the rich / the poor / the honest / the faithful / the brilliant

\*\*\* Yasmeen likes helping the **poor** .

● We use **the** when we are talking about family name : the Smiths / the Jacksons / the Stephens.

\*\*\* The **Masris** is a famous family in Jordan and Palestine.

● We use **the** when we are talking about parts of the house : the kitchen / the bathroom / the sitting room / the bedroom / the balcony /

\*\*\* Laila spends most of the time in the **kitchen**.

### تمارين الكتاب

6/ SB, page 35 :

Complete the text with *a, an, the* or – (zero article).

The Amman International Theatre Festival is said to be (1)..... biggest of its kind across (2)..... entire Middle East and (3)..... North Africa. It is held annually in (4)..... April, and (5)..... festival is (6)..... attempt to promote (7)..... Jordanian theatre. Performances are in (8)..... English and (9)..... Arabic. Many international stars and famous people from (10)..... Hollywood attend. Usually, (11)..... festival lasts for about eight days. (12)..... visitors can choose (13)..... days on which they want to attend. This is (14)..... great way to learn about different cultures at one event.

4/ WB, page 24 :

Complete the sentences with *a, an, the* or –. The first one is done for you.

1. .... Amman is the capital of .... Jordan.
2. It's one of.... oldest cities in.... world.
3. ....Petra is in.... south of Jordan. It's.... important archaeological site.
4. It was.... important city until..... huge earthquake destroyed it in about 663 CE.
5. .... Aqaba is next to..... Red Sea;.... people often go there for their holidays.
6. I'm very interested in ..... history, in particular..... history of Jordan.

5/ WB, page 25 :

Read and correct the dialogues. Add *a, an* or *the* where necessary. The first one is done for you.

1. **A:** I'm reading a really good book.  
**B:** Oh, what's title?
2. **A:** Do you ever go to art galleries?  
**B:** Yes, I do. There's big gallery in our town, and I often go there.
3. **A:** Where are Pontic Mountains?  
**B:** They're in Turkey.
4. **A:** Is there art museum in Amman?  
**B:** Yes, go to National Museum of Fine Arts.
5. **A:** Do you like music?  
**B:** Yes, I do. I play piano, actually.

## American vs British English

تختلف الانجليزية الامريكية عن الانجليزية البريطانية في الاملاء **spelling** والمفردات **vocabulary** و القواعد **grammar** **American English** **British English**

American English (AE) rarely uses the Present Perfect, whereas British English (BE) does:

-(AE) **Did you see that film yet?**

-(BE) **Have you seen that film yet?**

American English uses *gotten* as the past participle of *got*:

(AE) **He had gotten us some ice cream.**

(BE) **He got us some ice cream.**

American English uses *have* to show possession, whereas British English uses *have got*:

(AE) **I have a sister. Do you have a brother?**

(BE) **I've got a sister. Have you got a brother?**

\* British English also uses 'program' to refer to computer programs.

<b>SPELLING</b>		
Difference	American English	British English
Words ending -er/-re	center theater liter centimeter	centre theatre litre centimetre
Words ending -or/-our	favorite color harbor neighbor	favourite colour harbour neighbour
Words ending -og/-ogue	dialog catalog	dialogue catalogue
Words ending -m/-mme	program	programme*
Words ending -ize/-ise	authorize specialize normalize paralyze realize	authorise specialise normalise paralyse realise
Words ending -ice/-ise	practice (verb) practice (noun)	practise (verb) practice (noun)
Doubling of consonants	traveling canceling marvelous jeweler modeling	travelling cancelling marvellous jeweller modelling
Digraphs and graphemes	archeology homeopathy	archaeology homoeopathy

<b>VOCABULARY</b>	
American English	British English
apartment	flat
candy	sweets
conservatory	conservatoire
cookie	biscuit
drugstore	chemist's
elevator	lift
fall	autumn
gas	petrol
pants	trousers
school principal	head teacher
trunk	boot (of a car)
sidewalk	pavement
trash/ garbage	rubbish
vacation	holiday
take a look / a shower / a rest/ a break	have a look / a shower/ a rest/ a break

**تمارين الكتاب**

5/ SB, page 36 :

A tour guide is using American English. The following sentences are in British English. Rewrite them in American English.

1. Have you seen the textile workshop yet?  
.....
2. Let's have a look at that first.  
.....
3. Some of you have got tired from all the walking today.  
.....
4. Would anyone like to have a short rest?  
.....

5/ SB, page 36 :

The following sentences are in British English. Rewrite them in American English.

1. 'Goodness, you've got very tall!' said my aunt.  
.....
2. Have you ever been to an aquarium?  
.....
3. We're too late – the bus has just left.  
.....
4. I think it's time to have a break.  
.....
5. I haven't done my homework yet.  
.....

7/ SB, page 37 :

Read the online travel guide about Jordan. Find four examples of American English spelling. Write them in the table and work out the rules.

You only have to look at Jordan's beautiful mountains to see where the country's sand bottle artists get their inspiration from. This has led to an absolutely amazing traditional art form. Today, sand artists use artificial colors, sand and tools to create mini paintings, sometimes only a few centimeters high, in glass bottles.

These 'paintings without a brush' need an eye for detail, and a lot of patience. With time and skill, extremely beautiful scenes can be created, for example, lifelike camels traveling through the vast deserts. The end result is totally breathtaking. Anyone watching a sand artist at work will realize immediately how much skill is needed for this work.

American English	British English
color	colour
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....

6/ WB, page 25 :

Mark is American and Bruce is British. How would Bruce say sentences 1–3 in British English? How would Mark say sentences 4–6 in American English?

1. **Mark:** Did you see that exhibition yet?

**Bruce:** \_\_\_\_\_

2. **Mark:** I usually take a shower in the morning.

**Bruce:** \_\_\_\_\_

3. **Mark:** I just had my breakfast.

**Bruce:** \_\_\_\_\_

4. **Bruce:** Where's Leo? Have you seen him anywhere?

**Mark:** \_\_\_\_\_

5. **Bruce:** I'd like to have a look at those paintings.

**Mark:** \_\_\_\_\_

6. **Bruce:** Leo's already done his project.

**Mark:** \_\_\_\_\_

7/ WB, page 25 :

Complete the following table. The first one is done for you.

British English	American English
neighbour	1. neighbor
2. _____	liter
paralysed	3. _____
4. _____	canceled
marvellous	5. _____
6. _____	harbor

8/ WB, page 25 :

Look at these pairs of words that have the same meaning. Write Am (American English) or Br (British English) next to each word. The first one is done for you.

1. lift <b>Br</b> elevator <b>Am</b>	5. autumn ..... fall .....
2. pavement ..... sidewalk .....	6. rubbish ..... trash/garbage .....
3. candy ..... sweets .....	7. gas ..... petrol .....
4. vacation ..... holiday .....	8. cookie ..... biscuit .....

TEACHER OF ENGLISH  
JAMAL SAH  
0777376260

The word (s)	English Meaning	Arabic Meaning
ceramics	the art of producing something made from clay or porcelain, or the clay or porcelain items themselves	خزف / سيراميك
conservatory	(American usage for British conservatoire) a school where people are trained in music or acting	معهد موسيقى
installation	an art exhibit often involving video or moving parts	معرض فنون حركية
performing arts	a type of art that can combine acting, dance, painting and film to express an idea	فنون استعراضية
textiles	types of cloth or woven fabric	اقمشه
visual arts	art such as painting or sculpture that you look at, as opposed to literature or music	فنون بصريه
furnishings	the furniture and other things, such as curtains, in a room	قطع أثاث
hanging	a large piece of cloth that is hung on a wall as a decoration	سجاد يعلق على الجدران
sand artist	someone who models sand into an artistic form	فنان رسم بالرمل
camera obscura	Latin for 'dark room'; an optical device that led to photography and the invention of the camera	غرفة تحميض الصور
breath taking	wonderful, awe-inspiring	مدهش
demonstration	an act of explaining and showing how to do something, or how something works	عرض توضيحي
ground breaking	new, innovative	جديد- مبتكر
irrigate	to supply land with water so that crops and plants will grow	يروي
life like	very similar to the person or thing represented	مشابه للواقع
qualify	to be entitled to a particular benefit or privilege by fulfilling a necessary condition	يؤهل
restore	to repair or renovate a building, work of art, etc., so as to bring it back to its original condition	يجدد- يرمم
show case	to exhibit or display	يعرض
translation	the process of converting documents from one language to another	ترجمة
vary	to differ according to the situation	يختلف/ يتنوع
minaret	the tall, thin tower of a mosque from which Muslims are called to prayer	منذنة
craftsman	someone who is very skilled at a particular craft, a job or an activity that requires skills and in which they make things with their hands	فنان حرفي
glass blowing	the art of shaping a piece of hot, melted glass by blowing air into it through a tube	صناعة الزجاج بالنفخ
Fine Arts	Creation of beautiful objects	الفنون الجميلة
underline	to emphasise, to highlight	يؤكد
furnace	a large enclosed container in which you burn fuel, used for industrial purposes such as melting metal	فرن
solidifying	to make solid	تصلب
semi-opaque	<i>semi</i> means <i>half</i> ; <i>opaque</i> means <i>difficult to see through</i> ; <i>semi-opaque</i> means <i>not completely impossible to see through</i>	شبه معتم

turquoise	sea green colour	اللون الفيروزي
cobalt	a metal gives a dark blue colour to the glass	عنصر الكوبالت
transparent	clear or thin enough to see through	شفاف
fine	very thin and narrow; it's a 'delicate' swan so the lines wouldn't be thick or heavy	دقيق / ناعم / رقيق

تمارين الكتاب

2/ SB, page 36 :

Read the words in the box. Complete the mind map.

**silk ,soft furnishings, textiles, wall hangings, wooden toys**

handicrafts	
from animals	
from plants	
from cloth	

8/ SB, page 37 :

Write sentences using these words in American English spelling.

1. **specialise** : .....
2. **jeweler** : .....
3. **centre**: .....
4. **normalise** :.....
5. **favourite** : .....
6. **modeling** :.....
7. **theatre**: .....
8. **harbor** :.....

1/ AB, page 24 :

Choose the correct words to complete the following sentences. The first one is done for you.

1. Watch people acting a story at a theatre / *an installation*.
2. Admire *textiles* / *ceramics* but don't break them!
3. Look at beautiful pieces of art at a *play* / *gallery*.
4. Look at *an installation* / *a theatre* that has been set up in a public space.
5. Look at and touch *textiles* / *handicrafts* that have been sewn together.

2/ AB, page 24 :

Match the words in the box with the correct meanings. One word is not needed. The first one is done for you.

**ceramics, exhibition, gallery, handicrafts, heritage, sculpture, textiles**

1. beautiful objects made by hand **handicrafts**
2. a place where art is shown .....
3. a solid piece of art, usually made of stone, metal or wood .....
4. an event during which works of art are displayed .....
5. art made from clay .....
6. traditional culture, such as art, architecture, customs and beliefs .....

3/ AB, page 24 :

Complete the sentences with the correct adjective. One adjective is not needed. The first one is done for you.

**contemporary, cultural, educational, major, ongoing, visual**

1. We went to a concert yesterday. The music was written by a new young composer, so it was **contemporary**.
2. When we go on school trips, we always learn new things because the trips are \_\_\_\_\_.
3. King Hussein was a \_\_\_\_\_ world figure in the twentieth century.
4. Photography and painting are two examples of the \_\_\_\_\_ arts.
5. Art, music and literature are all part of our \_\_\_\_\_ life.

## The arts in Jordan

## KEY WORDS

The word (s)	English Meaning	Arabic Meaning
ceramics	the art of producing something made from clay or porcelain, or the clay or porcelain items themselves	خزف / سيراميك
conservatory	(American usage for British conservatoire) a school where people are trained in music or acting	معهد موسيقى
installation	an art exhibit often involving video or moving parts	معرض فنون حركية
performing arts	a type of art that can combine acting, dance, painting and film to express an idea	فنون استعراضية
textiles	types of cloth or woven fabric	أقمشه
visual arts	art such as painting or sculpture that you look at, as opposed to literature or music	فنون بصرية
Fine Arts	creation of beautiful objects	الفنون الجميلة
show case	to exhibit or display	يعرض

Jordan has a very rich cultural heritage thanks to the support of the Department of Culture and the Arts, which was founded in 1966 CE. Since then, the department has built up an exciting, ongoing programme of cultural activities related to all the arts: music, visual arts, performing arts and the written word.

للأردن تراث ثقافي غني جدا بفضل دعم وزارة الثقافة و الفنون التي انشأت عام 1966 م . منذ ذلك الحين, الوزارة وضعت برنامجا مدهشا متطورا للنشاطات الثقافية المتعلقة بكل أنواع الفنون : الموسيقى, الفنون البصرية , فنون الأداء و الكلمة المكتوبة .

In 1979 CE, the Royal Society of Fine Arts (RSFA) was established to promote visual arts in

Jordan and other countries in the region. It has links with major art galleries around the

world in order to encourage artists from different cultures to learn from each other.

عام 1979 م , الجمعية الملكية للفنون الجميلة تم إنشائها لتشر الفنون البصرية في الأردن و في البلدان الأخرى في المنطقة. لها علاقات مع معارض كبرى في العالم لتشجع الفنانين من مختلف الثقافات ليتعلموا من بعضهم.

The Jordan National Gallery of Fine Arts is one of the most important art museums in the

Middle East. The collection includes over 2,000 works of art, including paintings, sculptures,

photographs, installations, textiles and ceramics, by more than 800 artists from 59

countries. In 2013 CE, it held Jordan's largest art exhibition called '70 Years of Contemporary Jordanian Art'.

المتحف الوطني الأردني للفنون الجميلة هو احد أهم المتاحف الفنية في الشرق الأوسط . موجوداته تضم أكثر من 2000 عمل فني , تشمل لوحات , منحوتات , صور , مقاطع فيديو , مطرزات و خزف , لأكثر من 800 فنان من 59 دولة . في عام 2013 م , أقيم فيه أضخم معرض فني أردني تحت عنوان " 70 عاما من الفن الأردني المعاصر " .

Until the 1990s, most Jordanian literature was only available in Arabic. However, thanks to

PROTA (the Project of Translation from Arabic), many Jordanian plays, novels, short stories

and poems are now translated into English, and people all over the world are able to read and appreciate them.

حتى التسعينيات , معظم الأدب الرائي كان متوفرا باللغة العربية . مع ذلك , بفضل ( مشروع الترجمة من العربية ) فان العديد من المسرحيات , الروايات , القصص و القصائد هي الآن مترجمة إلى الانجليزية , و الناس من كل أنحاء العالم يمكنهم قراءتها و تقديرها .

**Every year, the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization**

**(UNESCO) chooses a different Arab city as the Arab Cultural Capital. In 2002 CE, the city of Amman was awarded this title.**

كل عام, تختار منظمة الأمم المتحدة للتربية و العلوم و الثقافة مدينة عربية مختلفة كعاصمة للثقافة العربية. في عام 2002 م, مدينة عمان تم منحها هذا اللقب.

**Jordan has a centuries-old musical heritage. The National Music Conservatory (NMC)**

**opened in 1986 CE, making it possible for more Jordanian students to study music seriously.**

**In 1987 CE, the National Centre for Culture and Arts was created, which showcases**

**theatre and dance in Jordan and the region.**

لدى الاردن ميراث موسيقي عمره قرن . المعهد الوطني للموسيقى افتتح عام 1986 م, جاعلا من الممكن للطلاب الاردنيين أن يدرسوا الموسيقى بشكل جاد. عام 1987 م, تم إنشاء المركز الوطني للثقافة و الفنون لعرض المسرحيات و الرقصات في الأردن و المنطقة.

**Realising the value of art and culture, Jordan decided to offer Jordanians and the world an annual arts festival. In 1981 CE, the Jerash Festival for Culture and Arts was founded.**

**This three-week-long summer programme is one of the largest cultural activities in the region. It takes place in the important archaeological site of Jerash, which underlines the close relationship between the arts and Jordan's cultural history.**

لإدراكه قيمة الفن و الثقافة, قرر الأردن أن يقدم للأردنيين و للعالم مهرجان فني سنوي. في عام 1981 م , تم تأسيس مهرجان جرش للثقافة و الفنون . هذا البرنامج الصيفي الذي يقام لمدة 3 أسابيع هو احد أضخم النشاطات الثقافية في المنطقة. يقام في احد أهم المواقع الأثرية في جرش و الذي يؤكد على الصلة الوثيقة بين الفنون و تاريخ الأردن الثقافي.

### تمارين الكتاب

4/ SB, page 35 :

**Listen to and read the report again and answer the questions.**

**1. How does the Royal Society of Fine Arts show its support for the arts in Jordan?**

.....

**2. What makes The Jordan National Gallery of Fine Arts a major institution in the world of art?**

.....

**3. How has translation helped Jordanian literature?**

.....

**4. What is the significance of the location of the annual Jerash Festival?**

.....

**5. 'To truly understand a country's culture, you have to understand its artistic heritage.'**

**Do you agree or disagree? Justify your answer.**

.....

.....

5/ SB, page 35 :

Find an example of the following uses of articles in the report.

1. *the* when the speaker and listener know what/who is being spoken about.

.....

2. *a/an* when it is not known what/who is being spoken about or it does not matter.

.....

3. *the* when we refer to a proper noun where there is only one of its type.

.....

4. zero article before uncountable and plural nouns, and when talking about something in general.

.....

5. zero article before the names of most countries, mountain ranges, languages, continents, towns, streets, days, months and years.

.....

#### COMPREHENSION TEST

1. Quote the sentence from the text which indicates that RSFA has connections with other galleries worldwide

.....

.....

2. The Jordan National Gallery of Fine Arts contains many collections of works of art. Write down two of them.

.....

3. Write down three institutions mentioned in the report that interest in art and culture in Jordan.

.....

4. What does the abbreviation ( PROTA) stand for?

.....

5. There are many cultural activities related to the arts. Write down two of them.

.....

6. Write down the sentence which indicates that Jordanian literature was only in one language for a long time.

.....

.....

7. what does the underlined word "textiles" mean?

.....

7. types of cloth or woven fabric

8. What do the underlined words ( pronouns ) refer to ?

.....

Critical Thinking :

1. The writer states that Jordan has a very rich heritage. Explain this statement , mentioning three benefits of arts.

.....

.....

.....

2. To truly understand a country's culture, you have to understand its artistic heritage. Think of this statement and , in two sentences , write down your point of view.

.....

.....

.....

.....

## Glass Blowing

### KEY WORDS

The word (s)	English Meaning	Arabic Meaning
craftsman	someone who is very skilled at a particular craft, a job or an activity that requires skills and in which they make things with their hands	حرفي
glass blowing	the art of shaping a piece of hot, melted glass by blowing air into it through a tube	صناعة الزجاج بالنفخ
demonstration	an act of explaining and showing how to do something, or how something works	عرض توضيحي
furnace	a large enclosed container in which you burn fuel, used for industrial purposes such as melting metal	فرن
solidifying	to make solid	تصلب
semi-opaque	<i>semi</i> means <i>half</i> ; <i>opaque</i> means <i>difficult to see through</i> ; <i>semi-opaque</i> means <i>not completely impossible to see through</i>	شبه معتم
turquoise	sea green colour	اللون الفيروزي
cobalt	a metal gives a dark blue colour to the glass	عنصر الكوبالت
transparent	clear or thin enough to see through	شفاف
fine	very thin and narrow; it's a 'delicate' swan so the lines wouldn't be thick or heavy	دقيق / ناعم / رقيق

Adnan, a professional craftsman, is at work in his studio. With the oven at 1,400 degrees centigrade, 20 hours a day, a glass-making studio isn't the most comfortable place to be. For Adnan, however, this is more than just a job. 'My family has been blowing glass for around 700 years,' he says. 'My father learnt the craft from **his** father, and he taught it to me when I was a child.' Adnan is passionate about this ancient craft, and regularly gives demonstrations and workshops to teach young people the skills of glassblowing.

عدنان، حرفي محترف، يعمل الأستوديو خاصته. بوجود فرن بدرجة حرارة 1400 درجة مئوية، و لمدة 20 ساعة يومية، أستوديو تصنيع الزجاج ليس المكان المريح للتواجد فيه. بالنسبة لعدنان، على أي حال، هذا أكثر من مجرد عمل. " عائلتي تنفخ الزجاج منذ حوالي 700 عام " يقول. " أبي تعلم الصنعة من والده، و هو علمني إياها منذ كنت طفلاً. عدنان عاطفي تجاه هذه الصنعة القديمة، و يقدم بانتظام استعراضات وورش عمل لتعليم الشباب مهارة تصنيع الزجاج .

He strongly believes that unless we interest more young people in learning the craft, nobody will know how to make hand-blown glass in the future. 'These days, young people don't always want to follow **their** parents' professions, and, added to that, glassblowing isn't an easy job.

**It has to be an obsession, as it is for me!**

يعتقد بقوة انه ما لم نجعل المزيد من الشباب يهتمون بتعلم الصنعة، فلا احد سيعرف كيف سيصنع الزجاج المنفوخ يدويا في المستقبل. " هذه الأيام، الشباب لا يريدون بالغالب إتباع مهن إبتاعهم، و يضيف، نفخ الزجاج ليس عملاً سهلاً. يجب إن يكون هاجسا كما هو بالنسبة لي .

Adnan still uses the technique that was first developed by the Phoenicians some 2,000 years ago. First, he pushes a thin metal blowpipe into the boiling hot furnace. Secondly, he lifts out the liquid sand and lays it on a metal plate. After that, he blows the red-hot glass until it becomes more flexible. Then he pulls and bends the glass into shape. He has to work extremely quickly because the liquid sand is already solidifying into glass. Adnan is making a delicate swan. Through the semi-opaque glass, you can see fine lines of turquoise, green and blue.

عدنان لا يزال يستخدم الأسلوب الذي تم تطويره أولاً من قبل الفينيقيين قبل حوالي 2000 عام . أولاً, يدفع أنبوب نفخ معدني رفيع داخل فرن يغلي.. ثانياً يخرج الرمل السائل و يضعه في صحن معدني . بعد ذلك , ينفخ الزجاج ليشكله لأحمر حتى يصبح أكثر مرونة . ثم يسحب و يلوي الزجاج ليشكله . عليه إن يعمل بصرع كبيرة لان الرمل السائل يتصلب بسرعة على شكل زجاج. يضع عدنان إوزة جميلة . من خلال زجاج شبه شفاف , بإمكانك إن ترى خطوطاً فيروزية و خضراء و زرقاء جميلة .

‘The sand gives us transparent, or “white”, glass,’ Adnan explains. ‘We get this beautiful dark, cobalt blue by adding the metal cobalt to the melted glass. Then, this blue becomes a lighter, sea-green turquoise after adding copper. Finally, we decorate the glass by hand.’  
الرمل يعطينا زجاج شفاف أو ابيض , يوضح عدنان " نحصل على هذا اللون الكوبالت الأزرق الداكن بإضافة معدن الكوبالت إلى الزجاج المذاب . بعد ذلك , هذا اللون الأزرق يصبح لونا فيروزيا بحريا و أكثر خفة بعد إضافة النحاس. أخيراً نقوم بتزيين الزجاج يدويا .

‘These days we recycle broken glass. We also use commercially produced colors instead of using natural ingredients as in the past. Apart from that, nothing else about this craft has

Changed through the centuries. You can’t use a machine to do this work,’ he says. ‘The old ways are still the best.’

هذه الأيام نكرر تصنيع الزجاج المكسور . كما إننا نستخدم ألوانا تجارية بدلا من استخدام مكونات طبيعية كما الماضي. عدا ذلك , لا شيء آخر في هذه الصناعة قد تغير عبر القرون . لا يمكنك استخدام الآلة للقيام بهذا العمل . الأساليب القديمة ما زالت هي الأمثل .

### تمارين الكتاب

2/ SB, page 38 :

Read the article again and choose the correct answers.

1. A glass-making studio isn’t comfortable because

- A.** it hasn’t changed much in hundreds of years. **B.** it’s incredibly hot.  
**C.** everything is done by hand. **D.** it is very small.

2. Adnan runs workshops and gives demonstrations because

- A.** he wants young people to learn the craft. **B.** glassblowing isn’t an easy job.  
**C.** it is an ancient craft. **D.** he has to work quickly.

3. A glassblower has to work very fast because

- A.** the furnace is extremely hot. **B.** machines are not used to do the work.  
**C.** hot, liquid glass becomes hard very quickly. **D.** he is making a glass swan.

1. .... 2. .... 3. ....

3/ SB, page 38 :

Work in pairs. Try to work out the meanings of the highlighted words in the article. Then check in a dictionary.

- 1. furnace : .....
- 2. solidifying : .....
- 3. semi-opaque : .....
- 4. turquoise :.....
- 5. cobalt : .....
- 6. transparent : .....
- 7. fine :.....

1/ SB, page 35 :

- 1. What traditional handicrafts is Jordan well known for?  
.....
- 2. Do you think that it is important for a country to keep producing traditional handicrafts? Why/Why not?  
.....  
.....  
.....

**COMPREHENSION TEST**

- 1. Quote the sentence which indicates that the glass-making studio is incredibly hot.  
.....
- 2. There are four steps to make glass. Write down two of them.  
.....
- 3. Write down the sentence which indicates that technology can't be used in glass making.  
.....
- 4. There are two things which have been changed in Adnan's craft through centuries. Write them down.  
.....
- 5. Whose way of work does Adnan follow in his work?  
.....
- 6. How did Adnan learn glassblowing ?  
.....
- 7. Find a word in the text which means "an act of explaining and showing how to do something, or how something works"  
.....
- 8. What do the underlined words ( pronouns ) refer to ?  
.....

**Critical thinking:**

- 1. the writer states that individuals and governments must work together to preserve ancient crafts. Explain this statement. Suggesting three ways to preserve traditional crafts.  
.....  
.....
- 2. Traditional crafts are in disappearing. Think of statement and , in two sentences , write down your point of view.  
.....  
.....

## A blog post

### KEY WORDS

The word (s)	English Meaning	Arabic Meaning
ceramics	the art of producing something made from clay or porcelain, or the clay or porcelain items themselves	خزف / سيراميك
textiles	types of cloth or woven fabric	اقمشه

Hi! My name is Rashed. I'm staying in London for a week, with my family. I hope you enjoy reading my blog.

اسمي راشد , أقيم لمدة أسبوع في لندن, مع عائلتي. أرجو أن تستمتعوا بقراءة مدونتي

Wednesday :الأربعاء:

Yesterday was brilliant. We decided to go to the Victoria and Albert Museum (also known as the V&A), **which** is a big museum of art and design in central London. It has one of the largest

collections of Islamic art in the world and, as you can imagine, we were keen to **have** a look.

الأمس كان رائعا . قررنا أن نذهب إلى متحف فيكتوريا و ألبرت و يعرف أيضا بـ (V&A) , و هو متحف كبير للفن و التصميم في وسط لندن . فيه إحدى اكبر مجموعة للفن الإسلامي في العالم , و كما تتخيلون , كنا تواقين لنلقي نظرة .

We spent most of our time in the Jameel Gallery, which opened in 2006 CE.

There were about 10,000 items on display (no, I didn't count them; the guide told us!).

There were carpets and other textiles as well as pottery, ceramics, paintings and things

made of ivory (from elephants), wood, metal and glass. My **favourite** thing was a beautiful

Egyptian jug, which looked as if it was made out of glass. In fact it is rock crystal, and it was

made over ten thousand years ago. The person who made it must have been incredibly skilled.

أمضينا معظم وقتنا في معرض ( جميل ) الذي افتتح عام 2006 م . كان هناك حوالي 10000 قطعة معروضة ( لا , لم أحصها , الدليل أخبرنا ) . كان هناك سجاجيد و منسوجات اخرى كذلك فخار و سيراميك و لوحات و أشياء اخرى مصنوعة من العاج ( من الفيلة ) و من الخشب و المعدن و الزجاج . الشيء المفضل لدي كان إبريق مصري جميل, ظهر و كأنه مصنوع من الزجاج . في الحقيقة كان من الصخر البلوري , و مصنوع منذ أكثر من 10000 عام . الشخص الذي صنعه لا بد و انه كان ماهرا جدا .

We were at the V&A all day (there's a good café there, and an excellent shop too!).

Then, although we were quite tired, in the evening we went to a concert at the Royal

Albert Hall. The orchestra was from Germany and **it** was brilliant! We had comfortable seats,

but a lot of people stood right in front of the orchestra. **They** didn't sit down at all! I've never

stood all the way through a concert, and I don't think I'd like to!

بقينا في متحف فيكتوريا و ألبرت طوال اليوم ( يوجد مقهى جيد هناك و محل ممتاز أيضا ) . بعد ذلك , رغم أننا كنا متعبين تماما , في المساء ذهبنا إلى إحدى الحفلات الموسيقية في قاعة ألبرت الملكية . الفرقة الموسيقية كانت من ألمانيا و كانت رائعة ! جلسنا على مقاعد مريحة, و لكن الكثير من الناس وقفوا أمام الفرقة تماما . لم يجلسوا أبدا ! لم أقف في حفلة موسيقية أبدا, ولا اعتقد أنني ارغب بان أفعل هذا.

10/ WB, page 26 :

Read the blog post quickly, and answer the questions.

1. Where was Rashed when he wrote the blog?

.....

2. What did he most enjoy looking at?

.....

3. Where did he go in the evening?

.....

4. What bothered him?

.....

11/ WB, page 26 :

Read the blog post again and answer the questions.

1. Why did Rashed and his family decide to go to the V&A Museum?

.....

2. Name four materials that Rashed mentions.

.....

3 Look at the words and phrases in bold. Is Rashed using British or American English? Justify your answer.

.....

4. Look at the sentences in brackets in lines 5–6. In your opinion, what question is Rashed answering and why?

.....

5. Would you stand up all the way through a concert? Why/Why not?

.....

**COMPREHENSION TEST**

1. There is a situation that bothered Rashed during the concert. Write it down.

.....

2. There are about 10000 items in display in the Jameel Gallery. Write two of them.

.....

3. What material was the Egyptian jug made of?

.....

4. What is the American equivalent for the word favourite ?

.....

5. Write down the sentence which indicates the time in which Jameel gallery was opened.

.....

6. There are some qualities that make the V&A museum popular . Write down two of them.

.....

7. Find a word in the text which means “**the art of producing something made from clay or porcelain, or the clay or porcelain items themselves**”

.....

8. What do the underlined words ( pronouns ) refer to?

.....

**Critical Thinking :**

1. You can do many activities during your holiday in a foreign country to make it an exciting journey. Explain this statement. Suggesting three benefits of visiting a foreign country .

.....

.....

.....

2. Travelling to other country with your family is an exciting experience. Think of this statement. And in two sentences, write down your point of view.

.....

.....

.....

**UNIT FIVE**  
**The arts**  
**MODEL ANSWERS**  
**Grammar**

**Articles**

تمارين الكتاب

6/ SB, page 35 :

1. the 2. the 3. - 4. - 5. the. 6. an 7. - 8. - 9. -10. - 11. the. 12. - 13. the 14. a

4/ WB, page 24 :

1. \_, the, \_ 2. the , the 3. \_, the , an 4. an , a 5. \_,the, \_ 6. \_ , the .

5/ WB, page 25 :

1. the title 2. A big 3. the Pontic 4. an art / the national 5. the piano

**American vs British English**

تمارين الكتاب

5/ SB, page 36 :

1. Did you see the textile workshop yet?
2. Let's take a look at that first.
3. Some of you have gotten tired after all the walking today.
4. Would anyone like to take a short rest?

5/ SB, page 36 :

1. 'Gosh, you've gotten very tall!' said my aunt.
2. Did you go to an aquarium yet?
3. We're too late – the bus left already.
4. I think it's time for rest.
5. I didn't do my homework yet.

7/ SB, page 37 :

American English	British English
color	colour
centimeters	centimetres
traveling	travelling
realize	realise

6/ WB, page 25 :

1. Have you seen that exhibition yet?
2. I usually have a shower in the morning.
3. I've just had my breakfast.
4. Where's Leo? Did you see him anywhere?
5. I'd like to take a look at those paintings.
6. Leo already did his project.

7/ WB, page 25 :

- 1 neighbor 2 litre 3 paralyzed 4 cancelled 5 marvelous 6 harbour

8/ WB, page 25 :

1. lift <u>Br</u> elevator <u>Am</u>	5. autumn <u>Br</u> fall <u>Am</u>
2. pavement <u>Br</u> sidewalk <u>Am</u>	6. rubbish <u>Br</u> trash/garbage <u>Am</u>
3. candy <u>Am</u> sweets <u>Br</u>	7. gas <u>Am</u> petrol <u>Br</u>
4. vacation <u>Am</u> holiday <u>Br</u>	8. cookie <u>Am</u> biscuit <u>Br</u>



تمارين الكتاب

2/ SB, page 36 :

from animals: silk

from plants: wooden toys

from cloth: soft furnishings, textiles, wall hangings

8/ SB, page 37 :

1. When I go to university, I want to specialize in Astrophysics.
2. You need to take your necklace to the jeweller to get it fixed.
3. If you want to learn English, you could go to a language center.
4. This kind of medicine helps to normalize the heart's function.
5. My favorite meal is *mansaf*.
6. An architect can predict what a building will look like by modelling it on a computer.
7. Tomorrow evening, I'm going to the theater to see a play by Shakespeare.
8. When the boat arrived at the harbour, we knew we had reached Lebanon.

1/ AB, page 24 :

1. a theatre
2. ceramics
3. gallery
4. an installation
5. textiles

2/ AB, page 24 :

1. handicrafts
2. gallery
3. sculpture
4. exhibition
5. ceramics
6. heritage

3/ AB, page 24 :

1. contemporary
2. educational
3. major
4. visual
5. cultural

# Reading

## The arts in Jordan

تمارين الكتاب

4/ SB, page 35 :

1. It shows its support by having links with major art galleries around the world and by promoting visual arts in Jordan.
2. It is so important because it has over 2,000 works of art by more than 800 artists from 59 countries.
3. Translation has helped Jordanian literature by making it more accessible to people all over the world.
4. It takes place in Jerash, which is an important archaeological site. This shows the close relationship between the arts and Jordan's cultural history.
5. Suggested answer: I agree with this statement. If we say that a culture is informed by the ideas and the physical artefacts from its past (as well as its present), we can say that artistic heritage gives us, at the very least, an excellent insight into the social structure of any given people. For instance, nowadays people outside Jordan and the Arab world will have more of an opportunity to understand Jordanian culture now that the PROTA initiative has been set up.

5/ SB, page 35 :

1. the department (line 3)
2. an exciting, ongoing programme (line 4); a different Arab city (lines 26–27)
3. the Department of Culture and the Arts (line 2); the Royal Society of Fine Arts (line 7); the National Centre for Culture and Arts (line 33)
4. music (line 5); art galleries (line 9); artists (line 10); literature (line 19)
5. Jordan (line 1); 1979 (line 7); 2013 (line 17); 2002 (line 27); Amman (line 28); 1987 (line 33); Jerash (line 41)

### COMPREHENSION TEST

1. It has links with major art galleries around the world in order to encourage artists from different cultures to learn from each other.
2. paintings, sculptures.
3. The Royal Society of Fine Arts and the National Gallery of Fine Arts.
4. (the Project of Translation from Arabic)
5. music, visual arts.
6. Until the 1990s, most Jordanian literature was only available in Arabic.
7. types of cloth or woven fabric
8. them : many Jordanian plays, novels, short stories and poems.

Critical Thinking :

1. There are many benefits of arts such as representing an important part of history and showing the cultural side of the country . Also, it can be a tourism attraction.
2. I agree with this statement. If we say that a culture is informed by the ideas and the physical artefacts from its past (as well as its present), we can say that artistic heritage gives us, at the very least, an excellent insight into the social structure of any given people. For instance, nowadays people outside Jordan and the Arab world will have more of an opportunity to understand Jordanian culture now that the PROTA initiative has been set up.

## Glass Blowing

تمارين الكتاب

2/ SB, page 38 :

1. B 2. A 3. C

3/ SB, page 38 :

furnace	a large enclosed container in which you burn fuel, used for industrial purposes such as melting metal
solidifying	to make solid
semi-opaque	<i>semi means half; opaque means difficult to see through; semi-opaque means not completely impossible to see through</i>
turquoise	sea green colour
cobalt	a metal gives a dark blue colour to the glass
transparent	clear or thin enough to see through
fine	very thin and narrow; it's a 'delicate' swan so the lines wouldn't be thick or heavy

1/ SB, page 35 :

1. metalwork, dyes and spices, candles, etc.

2. It is important for a country to keep producing handicrafts. Handicrafts are a part of that country's culture, and a part of its cultural identity. It is worth preserving since it contributes to this cultural identity, and reminds people of their artistic and social heritage.

### COMPREHENSION TEST

1. With the oven at 1,400 degrees Centigrade, 20 hours a day, a glass-making studio isn't the most comfortable place to be.

First, he pushes a thin metal blowpipe into the boiling hot furnace. Secondly, he lifts out the liquid sand and lays it on a metal plate.

3. You can't use a machine to do this work,' he says.

4. These days we recycle broken glass. We also use commercially produced colors instead of using natural ingredients as in the past.

5. the Phoenicians"

6. His father taught him.

7. demonstration.

8. his : Adnan / their : young people / it : the liquid sand.

Critical thinking:

1. There are many ways in which we can preserve these traditional crafts such as holding courses on how to make crafts and establishing organizations which interest in them . Also, encouraging local people to produce more items of them.

2. In my opinion, traditional crafts are in disappearing so we can do a lot of things to preserve traditional crafts such as teaching people how to preserve what is old and teaching them how to make crafts too.

## ***A blog post***

تمارين الكتاب

10/ WB, page 26 :

1. He was in London.
2. a beautiful Egyptian jug
3. a concert at the Royal Albert Hall
4. A lot of people stood in front of the orchestra and didn't sit down at all.

11/ WB, page 26 :

1. because the V&A has one of the largest collections of Islamic art in the world
2. glass, metal, ivory, wood
3. Rashed is using British English. He says 'have a look' instead of 'take a look'; he spells 'favourite' with 'ou' instead of 'o'; and he uses the Present Perfect instead of the Past Simple in 'I've never stood all the way through a concert.'
4. Suggested answer: He is answering the reader's questions: Did you count them? How do you know the number of items displayed? He thinks the reader might not understand how he knows the number.
- 5 Yes, I would like to enjoy it.  
No, it might be tiring for me.

### **COMPREHENSION TEST**

1. a lot of people stood right in front of the orchestra.
2. carpets and textiles.
3. It was made of rock crystal.
4. favorite.
5. We spent most of our time in the Jameel Gallery, which opened in 2006 CE.
6. It is a big museum of art and design in central London. It has one of the largest collections of Islamic art in the world.
7. ceramics.
8. which : the Victoria and Albert Museum / it : The orchestra / they : a lot of people

#### **Critical Thinking :**

1. There are many benefits of visiting a foreign country I country like knowing more about that country's traditions and history . Also enjoying its natural sights and meeting new people .
2. I think that travelling to another country with my family is an exciting experience . for example we can share happiness and enjoyment of our journey together . Also, it is a good way to strengthen the relations between the members of family.

# DERIVATION

## الإشتقاق

القاعدة العامة التي تنطبق على حالات الإشتقاق

قبل الأسماء صفات و بعد الصفات أسماء و قبل الأفعال أسماء و بعد الأسماء و الضمانر الشخصية أفعال و بعد الأفعال ظروف و بعد الظروف صفات:

(ما قبل الفراغ) ←←←←← Noun Verb Adverb Adjective Noun →→→→→ (ما بعد الفراغ)

### Noun Derivation : اشتقاق الاسم:

\* يشتق الاسم إذا وقع الفراغ في الجملة في الحالات التالية :

1. بعد الأدوات ( a , an , the ) إذا لم يتبع الفراغ اسم أما إذا تبعه اسم فتاتي صفة.

- The Middle East is famous for **the production** of olive oil.

- Fatima al –Fihri was born in **the ninth** century .

2. بعد صفات الملكية ( my , our , your , his , her , their , its ) .

- I will be going to university to complete **my education**.

3. بعد صفات الإشارة ( this , that , these , those ) .

- We can't comply with **this decision**

4. بعد محددات الكمية ( much , little , a little , few , a few , only , every , other , all , no any , many , one , two , three, four .....etc )

- There are **many inventions** made by Adeb Al- Balooshi.

5. قبل و بعد ( of ) و قبل و يعد ( 's ) الملكية .

- Have you seen Nasser's **collection** of post cards ? he's got hundreds!

6. بعد ( more ) بشرط أن لا تكون مسبوقه بأحد أفعال ( be ) .

- We need **more patience** in case of anger.

7. بعد حروف الجر ( in , of , on , between , from , under , with , for , at ...etc ) .

- There is a particular Bedouin style **of weaving** that buyers find very attractive.

ملاحظة هامة: في جميع الحالات التي يحتاج فيها الفراغ إلى اسم و كان بعد الفراغ اسم آخر نضع صفة.

### لواحق الأسماء : Noun Suffixes :

ion	production	ity	authority
ness	illness	y	archaeology
tude	attitude	age	shortage
ice	notice	or	iventor
ism	tourism	ce	influenncce
ment	government	ist	aechaeologist
ess	princess	ship	friendship
ure	pressure	dom	kingdom
er	teacher	ing	weaving

### Adjective Derivation : اشتقاق الصفة

\* تشتق الصفة إذا وقع الفراغ في الجملة في الحالات التالية :

1. بين **as ( adjective ) as / as..... as**

She is **as beautiful as** the moon .

2. بعد المحددات و المؤكدات و الظروف مثل :

( **very , so , too , quite , extremely , completely , definitely , absolutely , mainly , surely , essentially** )

-Ahmed was **extremely hungry**.

3. بعد أفعال مثل : ( **get , become , grow , look , seem , appear , feel , found** )

- Rand **looks happy** because she has passed her exams.

4. بعد ( **most / more** ) وخاصة بين ( **more** ) و ( **than** ) بشرط أن تكون ( **more** ) مسبوقة بأحد أفعال ( **be** )

- Land is **more expensive** than it was before.

5. بعد أفعال ( **be** ) بشرط أن تكون أفعالا رئيسية و ليست مساعدة.

- The exam was **difficult**.

### Adjective Suffixes : لواحق الصفات

ible	responsible	ous	dangerous
ful	beautiful	ory	satisfactory
ent	different	ing	interesting
less	careless	ed	interested
able	bearable	ant	important
ic	mathematic	an	American
ary	revolutionary	ive	creative
ect	perfect	al	social

### ملاحظات هامة :

- الصفة التي تنتهي بـ ( ed ) تستخدم لوصف العاقل و الصفة التي تنتهي بـ ( ing ) تستخدم لوصف غير العاقل.

- ما ينتهي بـ ( ing ) و ( ed ) يكون قبل الأسماء صفات .  
**Interesting film / Interested man .**

- ما ينتهي بـ ( ing ) و ( ed ) يكون قبل و بعد الأفعال أسماء .  
**Smoking is unhealthy / I hate smoking .**

- أفعال التصريف الثالث ( p.p ) تعامل معاملة الصفة .  
**This letter is written by hand.**

## Verb Derivation : اشتقاق الفعل

\* يشتق الفعل إذا وقع الفراغ في الجملة في الحالات التالية:

1. بعد **to** المصدرية . ( **to- infinitive** )

- I need **to evaluate** my work.

2. بعد أفعال ( **modals** ) يأتي فعل أساسي ( **base form** ) .

- You **should study** hard.

3. بعد أفعال ( **do** ) عند تكوين سؤال او جملة منفية المضارع البسيط او الماضي البسيط

- She **didn't succeed**.

4. بعد الفاعل سواء كان اسم او ضمير .

- Thanks a lot . I **appreciate** your kindness.

## Verb Suffixes : لواحق الفعل

fy	qualify	ieve	believe
ize	civilize	en	strengthen
ate	compensate	ide	provide

## Adverb Derivation : اشتقاق الظرف

\* يشتق الظرف إذا وقع الفراغ في الجملة في الحالات التالية:

1. أول الجملة و قبل فاصلة ، .....:

- **Finally** , Fares could pass the exams.

2. في نهاية الجملة بشرط أن يقع الفراغ بعد اسم أو ضمير أو فعل.

- He greeted the **guests warmly**.

3. كمادة معترضة في الأحوال التالية :

- بين احد أفعال (be) و صفة

- I was **extremely** tired .

- بين الفاعل ( اسم / ضمير ) و الفعل .

- He **surprisingly** told me about the secret.

## Adverb Suffixes : لواحق الظرف

ly	slowly
----	--------

ملاحظة:

- نحصل على الظرف (الحال) بإضافة (ly) لنهاية الصفة و بإسقاطها من الظرف نحصل على الصفة.

### ملاحظات عامة على الاشتقاق

1 - أدوات العطف التالية ( **and , as well as , or** ) تعطف كلمتين من نفس الجنس أي أن ما يتبعها يكون من جنس ما يسبقها

- **Smoking ( n ) and pollution ( n )** have the same effects.
- **Work makes you healthy ( adj ) and wealthy ( adj ) .**

2- إذا جاء الفراغ :-

- في بداية الجملة و متبوعا بفاصلة فإنه يحتاج لظرف .
- في بداية الجملة و متبوعا باسم فإنه يحتاج لصفة .
- في بداية الجملة و متبوعا بفعل فإنه يحتاج لاسم .
- في نهاية الجملة مسبوqa باسم و فعل فإنه يحتاج لظرف
- محصورا بين فعلين فإنه يحتاج لظرف.

3. إذا توالى اسمين وراء بعضهما يكون الاسم الأول صفة للاسم الثاني .

4. إذا خلت الكلمة من أي لاحقة من لواحق الاسم أو الصفة أو الظرف فهي غالبا ما تكون فعل.

5- العبارات التالية ( **lead to/ due to/ according to / belong to / looking forward to** ) يتبعها اسم أو شبه جملة اسمية و ليس فعل مجرد

6. إذا كان الفراغ مسبوqa بظرف نعتمد على الكلمة التي تسبق الظرف لتحديد ما يحتاجه الفراغ . ( نعتبر أن الظرف كلمة زائدة ) .

### مشتقات تمارين المستوى الثالث

verb	noun	adjective	adverb
ينتج <b>produce</b>	<b>production</b> إنتاج <b>product</b> منتج <b>producer</b> منتج	productive غزير الإنتاج	Productively بشكل منتج
.....	<b>medicine</b> طب	<b>medical</b> طبي	medically طبيا
يرث <b>inherit</b>	<b>inheritor</b> وارث <b>inheritance</b> ميراث	<b>inheritable</b> يمكن توريثه	.....
.....	<b>nine</b> تسعة	<b>ninth</b> التاسع	ninthly تاسعا
ينشأ <b>originate</b>	<b>origin</b> أصل <b>originality</b> أصالة	<b>original</b> أصلي	originally أصلا
يخترع <b>invent</b>	<b>invention</b> اختراع <b>inventor</b> مخترع	<b>inventive</b> مبدع	inventively بإبداع
يكتشف <b>discover</b>	<b>discovery</b> اكتشاف <b>discoverer</b> مكتشف	<b>discovered</b> مكتشف <b>discoverable</b> قابل للاكتشاف	.....
يؤثر <b>influence</b>	<b>influence</b> تأثير	<b>influential</b> مؤثر	influentially بشكل مؤثر
ينسج <b>weave</b>	<b>weaver</b> نساج <b>weaving</b> نسيج	<b>weaved</b> منسوج	.....
يجذب <b>attract</b>	<b>attraction</b> جذب	<b>attractive</b> جذاب	attractively بجاذبية
يبدع / يخلق <b>create</b>	<b>creature</b> مخلوق <b>creation</b> خلق / إبداع	<b>creative</b> مبدع / خلاق	creatively بإبداع
يترجم <b>translate</b>	<b>translation</b> ترجمة <b>translator</b> مترجم	<b>translated</b> مترجم	.....
يقدر <b>appreciate</b>	<b>appreciation</b> تقدير	<b>appreciative</b> ممتن / مقدر	appreciatively بتقدير
يعلم <b>educate</b>	<b>education</b> تعليم <b>educator</b> معلم	<b>educational</b> تعليمي <b>educative</b> تثقيفي	educationally تعليميا
يجمع <b>collect</b>	<b>collection</b> مجموعة	<b>collective</b> تعاوني / مشترك	collectively بتعاون

<b>install</b> يركب	<b>installation</b> تركيب	<b>installed</b> مثبت / مركب	.....
<b>operate</b> يشغل / يجري عملية	<b>operation</b> تشغيل / عملية	<b>operational</b> مشغل / جاهز للعمل	<b>operationally</b> تشغيليا
<b>expect</b> يتوقع	<b>expectancy</b> توقع <b>expectation</b> رجاء / أمل	<b>expectant</b> متوقع	<b>expectantly</b> بترقب
<b>contemporise</b> يحدث	<b>contemporisation</b> تحديث	<b>contemporary</b> معاصر	<b>contemporarily</b> بالتزامن
<b>visualise</b> يبصر	<b>vision</b> رؤية	<b>visual</b> بصري	<b>visually</b> بصريا
.....	<b>tradition</b> تقليد	<b>traditional</b> تقليدي	<b>traditionally</b> تقليديا
<b>organise</b> ينظم	<b>organisation</b> منظمة	<b>extreme</b> اقصى / جدا <b>organised</b> منظم <b>organisational</b> تنظيمي	<b>extremely</b> بدرجة قصوى <b>organisationally</b> تنظيميا
<b>Intend</b> ينوي	<b>Intention</b> نية	<b>intended</b> مقصود	.....
.....	<b>archaeology</b> علم الآثار <b>archaeologist</b> عالم الآثار	<b>archaeological</b> اثري	<b>archaeologically</b> اثريا
.....	<b>child</b> طفل <b>children</b> أطفال	.....	.....
<b>train</b> يتدرب	<b>training</b> تدريب <b>trainer</b> مدرب	<b>trained</b> مدرب	.....
.....	<b>person</b> شخص <b>people</b> ناس / أشخاص	.....	.....
<b>bring</b> يجلب / يحضر	.....	<b>brought</b> منقول / احضر	.....
.....	<b>tourist</b> سائح <b>tourism</b> سياحة	.....	.....
<b>prescribe</b> يصف	<b>prescription</b> وصف	<b>prescribed</b> موصوف	.....
.....	<b>culture</b> ثقافة	<b>cultural</b> ثقافي	<b>culturally</b> ثقافيا
.....	<b>majority</b> غالبية	<b>major</b> كبير	.....
.....	.....	<b>on going</b> مستمر / متطور	.....
<b>infect</b> يعدي	<b>infection</b> عدوى	<b>infectious</b> معدي	<b>infectiously</b> بشكل معدي
<b>diagnose</b> يشخص	<b>diagnosis</b> تشخيص <b>diagnoses</b> تشخيصات	<b>diagnostic</b> تشخيصي <b>diagnostical</b> تشخيصي <b>diagnosed</b> مشخص	<b>diagnostically</b> تشخيصيا
<b>believe</b> يعتقد	<b>belief</b> اعتقاد	<b>believable</b> معقول	<b>believably</b> بشكل معقول
<b>succeed</b> ينجح	<b>success</b> نجاح	<b>successful</b> ناجح	<b>successfully</b> بنجاح
<b>conclude</b> يلخص	<b>conclusion</b> خلاصة	<b>conclusive</b> ملخص	<b>conclusively</b> بشكل ملخص
	<b>surgery</b> جراحة <b>surgeon</b> جراح	<b>surgical</b> جراحي	<b>surgically</b> جراحيًا

7/ WB, page 21 :

Complete the sentences with words formed from the words in brackets.

1. The Middle East is famous for the ..... of olive oil. **(produce)**
2. Ibn Sina wrote ..... textbooks. **(medicine)**
3. Fatima al-Fihri was born in the ..... century. **(nine)**
4. My father bought our house with an ..... from his grandfather. **(inherit)**
5. Scholars have discovered an..... document from the twelfth century. **(origin)**
6. Do you think the wheel was the most important..... ever? **(invent)**
7. Al-Kindi made many important mathematical ..... . **(discover)**
8. Who was the most ..... writer of the twentieth century? **(influence)**

7/ SB, page 39:

Complete the text with the suitable words derived from the words in brackets.

Madaba is the place where most Jordanian weavers buy their raw materials. Sheep's wool, and goat and camel hair are used by Bedouin tribes and villagers all over Jordan to (1)..... **(product)** rugs, bags and other beautiful items. (2)..... **(Traditional)**, the whole process is done by hand, from the washing of the wool to the finished article. There is a particular Bedouin style of (3)..... **(weave)** that buyers find very (4)..... **(attraction)**. Another craft practised in Madaba is the (5)..... **(creative)** of ceramic items.

9 / SB, page 25:

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in the box.

translation , archaeology , appreciation , educate , collect , installation

1. Petra is an important..... site.
2. I will be going to university to continue my .....
3. In our exam, we had to ..... a text from Arabic into English.
4. They are going to..... a new air conditioning unit in our flat.
5. Thank you for your help, I really ..... it.
6. Have you seen Nasser's..... of postcards? He's got hundreds!

4 / SB, page 42:

Choose the correct option in brackets to complete the following sentences.

1. Many instruments that are still used today in..... were designed by Arab scholars.  
(operational / operate / operations)
2. When do you..... to receive your test results?  
(expect / expectancy / expectantly)

3/ AB, page 24 :

Complete the sentences with the correct adjective. One adjective is not needed. The first one is done for you.

contemporisatin, cultur, education, majority, ongoing, vision

1. We went to a concert yesterday. The music was written by a new young composer, so it was **contemporary**.
2. When we go on school trips, we always learn new things because the trips are \_\_\_\_\_.
3. King Hussein was a \_\_\_\_\_ world figure in the twentieth century.
4. Photography and painting are two examples of the \_\_\_\_\_ arts.
5. Art, music and literature are all part of our \_\_\_\_\_ life.

D / TB, page 149:

Complete the text using the correct form of the words in capitals at the end of each line.

On the tiny island of Arran in Scotland, the local people are bringing back an ancient ..... (1) . This has proved to be ..... (2) beneficial to the community.  
The tradition in question is the craft of ..... (3) .  
Until a hundred years ago, weaving was the main profession of the island's women. An ..... (4) , Arran Textiles, was set up a few years ago to offer classes in traditional weaving skills. It was so popular that the project, which had originally been ..... (5) for older women, was extended to include school .....(6) , younger women and men, too. It has also started offering..... (7) courses to people who do not live on the island. Arran Textiles has helped..... (8) who were previously socially isolated, and it has also ..... (9) the added benefits of new business opportunities and support for .....(10)

1. TRADITIONAL
2. EXTREME
3. WEAVE
4. ORGANISE
5. INTEND
6. CHILD
7. TRAIN
8. PERSON
9. BRING
10. TOURIST

B / WB, page 59:

Read the text and complete it using the correct form of the words in capitals at the end of each line.

Amazing (1) ..... advances are constantly taking place in these days of technological and scientific (2) ..... . Many people expect instant cures, and prefer to get a (3) ..... , but it is worth remembering that our immune systems can fight (4).....and diseases on their own, too. Research has been done to find out why some people survive cancer. One hundred people who had survived a serious (5) ..... were interviewed twelve years after they had been diagnosed. The (6) ..... of the study was to discover if there was anything in common with the ways in which they had acted after their diagnosis. They had all used different treatments such as (7) ..... , radiotherapy, acupuncture and special diets. What they all had in common, however, was a strong (8) ..... that what they were doing would be (9) ..... . This survey has limited (10) ..... , but one thing it shows is that a positive attitude can help your immune system to work.

1. MEDICINE
2. DISCOVER
3. PRESCRIBE
4. INFECT
5. DIAGNOSE
6. INTEND
7. SURGEON
8. BELIEVE
9. SUCCEED
10. CONCLUDE

## DERIVATION

الإشتقاق

### MODEL ANSWERS

#### تمارين الكتاب

7/ WB, page 21 :

- 1.production 2.medical 3. ninth 4. inheritance 5.original 6. invention 7.discoveries 8.influential

7/ SB, page 39:

- 1.produce 2.Traditionally 3. weaving 4. attractive 5. creation

9 / SB, page 25:

- 1.archaeological 2.education 3. translate 4. install 5. appreciate 6. collection

4 / SB, page 42:

- 1.operations 2. expect

3/ AB, page 24 :

1. contemporary 2. educational 3. major 4. visual 5. cultural

D / TB, page 149:

- D. 1. tradition 2. extremely 3. weaving 4. organisation 5.intended 6. children 7. training 8. people  
9. brought 10. tourism

B / WB, page 59:

1. medical 2. discoveries 3. prescription 4. Infections 5. diagnosis 6. intention 7. surgery 8. belief  
9. successful 10. Conclusions

# GUIDED WRITING

## الكتابة الموجهة

حيث يطلب من الطالب كتابة جملتين باستخدام المعلومات الموجودة في جدول مع استخدام أدوات الربط المناسبة (Linking Words) مثل:

- أيضاً too بالإضافة in addition أيضاً also أو or و and -
- ومع ذلك however لكن but -
- لكي in order to لأن because -
- مثل such as مثلاً For example -
- أخيراً finally ثانياً secondly أولاً firstly -
- مقارنة مع : in comparison with -
- بدلا من : instead of -
- بينما : whereas/ while -

ملاحظة: لا يوجد إجابة نموذجية لهذا الموضوع لكن عليك أن تراعي النقاط التالية:

1. فهم المطلوب من الموضوع و كيفية التعامل معه.
2. الانتباه للعنوان هل هو مفرد/ جمع .
3. استخدام أدوات الربط المناسبة
4. الانتباه لعلامات الترقيم و الإملاء و التركيب القواعدي للجمل .
5. استغلال العنوان المعطى لتكوين مقدمة بسيطة عن الموضوع .
6. تذكر أن كل جملة يجب أن تحتوي على فاعل و فعل .

### EXAMPLES

Read the information in the table below, and then write **two sentences** about ..... Use the appropriate linking words such as: and, too, also --- etc.

1.

#### Reasons that make people leave their home countries

- seek better life.
- complete education.
- find better jobs.
- learn about different cultures.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**2.**

<b>How to make use of unwanted books ...</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- exchange them with others.</li><li>- sell them to bookstores.</li><li>- recycle them.</li><li>- donate them to local libraries.</li></ul>

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**3.**

<b>The best ways to study ...</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- make a study schedule.</li><li>- study in an appropriate setting.</li><li>- keep a well – kept notebook.</li><li>- learn the most important facts first.</li></ul>

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**4.**

<b>Successful people</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- work hard.</li><li>- communicate openly.</li><li>-learn new skills</li></ul>

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**5.**

<b>Characteristics of Traditional Education</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- students attend the classes in person.</li><li>- students have more opportunities to join clubs .</li><li>-students need more guidance and more direct contact with teachers.</li><li>-students attend classes at specific times or in a specific relation.</li></ul>

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

**6.**

<b>Watching sports on TV</b>	<b>Watching sports live</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- exciting</li><li>- comfortable and cheap</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- noisy</li><li>-uncomfortable and expensive</li></ul>

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

**7.**

<b>The Internet</b>	
<b>advantages</b>	<b>disadvantages</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>-save effort</li><li>-find useful information</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- make people isolated</li><li>- decline mental activity</li></ul>

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

**8.**

Read the information below , and then write a brief biography using all the given notes below about ..... . Use the appropriate linking words.

<b>Name</b>	Najeeb Mahfouth
<b>Place/ Date of birth</b>	Cairo, 1911
<b>Place/Date of death</b>	Cairo , 2006
<b>Profession</b>	Novelist
<b>Achievements</b>	Awarded the Nobel Prize for Literature Father of Modern Arabic Literature

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**9.**

<b>Name</b>	Ibn Bassal
<b>Date</b>	lived in the eleventh century CE
<b>Location</b>	Al-Andalus
<b>Occupation and Interests</b>	writer, scientist and engineer / interested in botany and agriculture
<b>Achievements</b>	writing <i>A Book of Agriculture</i> ; designing water pumps and irrigation systems
<b>Legacy</b>	agricultural instructions and advice

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# GUIDED WRITING

## الكتابة الموجهة

### MODEL ANSWERS

- 1. There are many reasons** that make people leave their home countries **such as** **seeking** better life **and completing** their education.  
**In addition , they can** find better jobs **and** learn about different cultures.
- 2. There are many ways** to make use of unwanted books **such as** **exchanging** them with others **and selling** them to bookstores.  
**Finally , recycling** them **and donating** them to local libraries.
- 3. There are many best ways** to study **like making** a study schedule **and studying** in an appropriate setting.  
**Ather ways of studying are** : **keeping** a well – kept notebook **and learning** the most important facts first.
- 4. There are many qualities that** successful people **have such as** **working** hard **and communicating** openly .  
**Also, they** learn new skills.
- 5. There are many characteristics** of Traditional Education **such as** students attend the classes in person **and they** have more opportunities to join clubs.  
**Also,** students need more guidance and more direct contact with teachers **and they** attend classes at specific times or in a specific relation.
6. Watching sports on TV **is more** exciting **than** watching sports live.  
Watching sports on TV **is** comfortable and cheap **but** watching sports live **is** uncomfortable and expensive.
- 7. On the one hand , there are many advantages of** the Internet **like** **saving** effort and **finding** useful information .  
**On the other hand, it has some disadvantages like** making people isolated and **declining** mental activity.
8. Najeeb Mahfouth **was born in** Cairo in 1911 **and died in the same place** in 2006.  
**He was a** novelist , **so he was** awarded the Nobel Prize for Literature **and called** the father of Modern Arabic Literature
9. Ibn Bassal was a famous Muslim scientist who lived in Al-Andalus , Spain in the 11<sup>th</sup> century CE . He was a practical man and he worked with the king of Toledo, Al-Ma'mun . Ibn Bassal was a great writer , a famous scientist and an engineer too . He wrote a famous book called A Book of Agriculture . The book contained 16 chapters about trees , fruit , herbs and vegetables . He also designed an irrigation system . Finally , Ibn Bassal left a great legacy to the world . His book and the irrigation systems had great influence on farmers and farming around the world .



**A problem for our wildlife**

**1. Read the beginning of a newspaper article and answer the questions.**

Despite the best efforts of conservation groups and their campaigns, the world's population of many species, including African elephants, tigers and seals, is still decreasing.

It is people's increasing need for land and resources, along with hunting and fishing, which are responsible for this rapid decline in wildlife.

رغم الجهود الجيدة لمجموعات الحماية و حملاتهم , إلا أن عدد كبير من أنواع الحيوانات , بما فيها الفيلة الإفريقية , النمر و الفقمات , لا يزال يتناقص . إنها حاجة البشر المتزايدة للأرض و المصادر , إضافة إلى أن صيد الحيوانات و الأسماك , مسؤول عن هذا التناقص السريع في الحيوانات البرية .

Exotic mammals such as big cats are threatened the most, but even common birds and insects in many parts of the world are in danger of dying out forever. According to a report by the World Wildlife Fund and the Zoological Society of London, wildlife populations around the world have been reduced by 52 per cent on average since 1970 CE.

تديبات غريبة مثل القطط الكبيرة هي الأكثر تهديدا, لكن حتى الطيور العادية و الحشرات في العديد من أجزاء العالم تنقرض إلى الأبد. وفقا لتقرير منظمة الحياة البرية العالمية و جمعية الحيوان في لندن , فإن عدد الحيوانات البرية في العالم اخفض بمعدل 52 % منذ عام 1970 م .

**1. What evidence is there in the text that attempts have been made in the past to stop the decline in the wildlife population?**

.....  
.....  
.....

**2. Name three reasons for the disappearance of many animals around the world.**

.....  
.....  
.....

**3. Which species is the most endangered? Which of the reasons, in your opinion, apply to this species in particular?**

.....  
.....  
.....

**4. 'More than half the world's wildlife has disappeared in the last fifty years.' Is this statement correct? What evidence is there for this claim?**

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

**2. Listen to the rest of the newspaper article and answer the questions.**

The report also carries the warning that humans are using resources faster than the planet can restore. For example, we are cutting down forests more quickly than newly-planted trees can grow, overfishing is causing a marine imbalance, and pollution is becoming harder and harder to control.

و أيضا يحمل التقرير تحذيرا من أن البشر يستخدمون الموارد أسرع مما يستطيع كوكب الأرض تجديده. مثلا, نحن نقطع الغابات بسرعة اكبر مما تستطيع الأشجار المزروعة حديثا أن تنمو , و يسبب الصيد الجائر عدم توازن بحري , و التلوث تصبح السيطرة عليه أصعب و أصعب.

The authors of the report hope that this picture will serve as a wake-up call to all of us.

They want to emphasise how important it is for each one of us to take responsibility for our actions, and to protect our planet by thinking carefully about everything we do.

و يأمل مؤلفو التقرير أن هذه الصورة ستكون بمثابة للاستيقاظ لنا جميعا . هم يريدون التأكيد كم هو مهم لكل واحد منا أن يتحمل المسؤولية عن أعمالنا , و أن نحمي كوكبنا من خلال التفكير مليا في كل ما نقوم به .

1. Name two examples of how the world is running out of natural resources.

.....  
.....

2. Choose the correct meaning of a 'wake-up call'.

a. an alarm clock   b. a warning   c. a telephone call   d. a danger

.....

3. What do the authors of the report hope to achieve? There are two possible answers.

.....  
.....  
.....

**Vocabulary and grammar:**

3. Choose the most suitable item from the words in the box to complete the sentences. One word is not needed.

**sustainability , apparatus , physician, mortality, prosthetic**

1. After our Science lesson in the laboratory, we always help the teacher to put the..... away.

2. The nature reserve uses recycled water, which helps the..... of the environment.

3. Athletes with ..... legs can take part in the Paralympics.

4. Professor Badari, aged 67, is the hospital's leading ..... specialising in cancer care.

4. Choose the correct option in brackets to complete the following sentences.

1. When we were younger, we ..... live in a village. We moved to the city when I was about ten years old. (were used to / use to / used to)

2. By the end of this year, we..... here for ten years. (will live / will be living / will have lived)

5. Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning as the first.

1. He has written many books, but his final book made him famous all over the world. He has written many books, but it .....

2. He started studying at 5 p.m. It's 10 p.m., and he's still studying. He ..... since 5 p.m.

3. It is normal for me now to get up early to study. I am .....

**Speaking :**

6. Your local health centre has been given a large donation and they want to use it to improve the facility. Here are some ways in which it could be improved:

- a cafeteria • disabled access • a nutrition centre • a new swimming pool

Discuss with your partner the advantages and disadvantages of all the possible facilities. Decide which two facilities are the most useful.

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

**Writing**

7. Edit the following text. There are two grammar mistakes and three punctuation mistakes. Find and correct them.

Scientists will say that exercise is not only important for general fitness; but that it is also good for the brain, it helped us concentrate better? As a result, we perform better in exams.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. .... 5. ....

## Revision A / SB , pages 41- 42

### MODEL ANSWERS

**1.** 1. The article tells us that the population of certain species is still decreasing and this is 'despite the best efforts of conservation groups and their campaigns'. This suggests that the work has been going on for some time.

2. Animals are disappearing around the world because people need the land; they are using resources and they are hunting and fishing.

3. Big cats are the most endangered. In my opinion, this is because they are losing their habitats. People are cutting down forests for the wood and for land to build on, which means the big cats have less land to live on. It means the animals that they eat are becoming scarcer too.

4. Yes, the statement is correct. The world's wildlife has been reduced by more than 52 per cent, therefore more than half has disappeared.

**2.** 1. Answers should include two of the following examples: forests are being cut down too quickly; there is too much fishing; pollution is out of control.

2. b

3. The authors of the report hope to show us that responsibility for one's own actions is important. OR They want to show us the importance of protecting our planet in everything we do.

**3.** 1. apparatus 2. sustainability 3. prosthetic 4. Physician

**4.** 1. used to 2. will have lived

**5.** 1. is/was his final book that made him famous all over the world.

2. has been studying

3. used to getting up early to study now.

**6.** 6. -The cafeteria can help people get what they need like water , juice and sandwich . the disadvantage it may cause noise and people may drop litter on the ground .

-It is good idea to enable **disabled to access** all the facilities of the centre , but some places are too narrow to be accessed by the disabled .

-A **nutrition centre** will be helpful to the poor , it will provide them with healthy food , but it will need a big annual budget.

-Having a new **swimming pool** will encourage children to come to the centre , but we will need considerable quantities of water.

- I think the most useful two facilities are: a cafeteria and disabled access.

**7.** 1. say 2. fitness, 3. brain. It 4. helps 5. concentrate better.

## Reading

### Ibn Rushd

#### 1. Read the beginning of this article about Ibn Rushd and answer the questions.

Ibn Rushd was a famous Islamic polymath who was born in Cordoba, Al-Andalus, in the twelfth century. During his lifetime, he was widely known and respected for his teaching and his books. Even now, nearly nine hundred years after his birth, he is still remembered as a great scholar, scientist and writer. In fact, he is even remembered in space because scientists named an asteroid (that's a rock which orbits the sun) after him, in honour of his great contributions to astronomy.

كان احبائه, علامة / متعدد الثقافات إسلامي شهير ولد في قرطبة , الأندلس , في القرن الثاني عشر . خلال حياته , كان يعرف على نطاق واسع و احترام لتعليمه و كتبه . حتى الآن, بعد ما يقرب من 900 سنة من ولادته, لا يزال يذكر بوصفه باحث عظيم و عالم و كاتب. في الواقع, حتى انه يتم تذكره في الفضاء لان العلماء سموا باسمه كويكب ( صخرة تدور حول الشمس ), تكريما لإسهاماته العظيمة في علم الفلك.

#### 1. Approximately how many years ago was Ibn Rushd born?

#### 2. The text describes an unusual way of honouring Ibn Rushd. What is it, and why was it done?

#### 2. Listen to the rest of the information and answer the questions.

As a young man, Ibn Rushd studied the law. He also studied philosophy, and soon took up medicine too. One of his most influential works was a medical encyclopaedia, *Kitab al-Kuliyyat fi -Tibb* (كتاب الكلِّيَّاتِ فِي الطِّبِّ), or 'Generalities' as it is known in the West.

Ibn Rushd also wrote books on psychology, geography, physics, maths and music.

From the age of 31 until his death about 40 years later, he wrote an amazing number of books – at least 80 books of his own as well as a large number of translations of Greek philosophy.

Although the place where he died was Morocco, there is a statue of Ibn Rushd in Cordoba

where he was born, and where for many years he lived as a scholar, lawyer, scientist, doctor and writer.

عندما كان شابا , درس ابن رشد القانون . و درس أيضا الفلسفة , و سرعان ما احترف الطب أيضا. احد أعماله المؤثرة كان موسوعة طبية , ( كتاب الكلِّيَّاتِ فِي الطِّبِّ ) أو " العموميات " كما هو معروف في الغرب . كتب ابن رشد أيضا كتباً في علم النفس و الجغرافيا و الفيزياء و الرياضيات و الموسيقى. من سن 31 حتى وفاته في وقت لاحق بـ 40 عاما , كتب عددا مذهلا من الكتب – لا يقل عن 80 كتابا كتبها بنفسه , فضلا عن عدد كبير من ترجمات من الفلسفة اليونانية . على الرغم من أن المكان الذي توفي فيه كان المغرب , إلا أن هناك تمثال لابن رشد في قرطبة التي ولد فيها , و حيث عاش لسنوات عديدة كباحث و محامي و عالم وطبيب و كاتب

1. What subject did 'Generalities' deal with?

.....

2. How old was Ibn Rushd when he started writing books, and roughly how many original books did he write?

.....

3. How is he remembered in the place of his birth?

.....

**Speaking :**

3. Work with a partner.

a. Look at the list of inventions and add two more of your own ideas.

- the printing press .....
- the wheel .....
- the World Wide Web .....
- antibiotics .....
- the radio .....
- writing .....
- electric lighting .....
- paper .....
- ..... .....
- ..... .....

b Number the inventions in order of importance 1 to 10 (1 = the most important). Discuss ideas and make sure you can explain them.

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

**Writing**

4. Which invention did you choose as the most important? Give your reasons.

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

## Grammar:

5. Choose the correct option, **a**, **b**, **c** or **d**.

1. Excuse me, is there ..... chemist's near here?

**a.** an                    **b.** the                    **c.** –                    **d.** a

2. In three years' time, my brother ..... graduated from university.

**a.** has                    **b.** will have                    **c.** is going to                    **d.** will

3. Soon we ..... packing for our holiday.

**a.** 're going to                    **b.** 'll be                    **c.** 're going                    **d.** will have

4. Where did they ..... to school?

**a.** used to going                    **b.** used to go                    **c.** use to go                    **d.** use going

6. Write one sentence that means the same.

1. The Egyptians built the pyramids.

It was the .....

2. Ali intends to finish his project tonight.

Ali is .....

3. London is a huge city. It's the capital of the UK.

London,.....

7. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. Are you planning ..... shopping tomorrow?                    (**go**)

2. Where have you been? I ..... for ages.                    (**wait**)

3. Our grandmother used ..... us stories at bedtime.                    (**tell**)

4. Will it still ..... this evening?                    (**rain**)

5. Before she went to the library, Huda ..... her mother to prepare lunch.                    (**help**)

## Vocabulary

8. Complete the following sentences with words from the box. One word is not needed.

**ailment , artificial , equipment , fund , textiles**

1. My sister wants to be a fashion designer and work with.....

2. Before the boys go climbing, they'll go to a special shop to buy all the ..... that they need.

3. Older people tend to suffer from more ..... s than younger people.

4. My parents have saved enough money to ..... our university courses.

9. Write the words in the correct lists. Two of the words are not needed.

**arithmetic, astronomer ,gallery ,calculations, polymath, textiles, disabilities, geometry, smartphone, physicist, ceramics, symptoms, career, allergies**

<b>Mathematics</b>	
<b>Medical matters</b>	
<b>People</b>	
<b>The arts</b>	

10. Complete the sentences with words from exercise 9.

1. If you don't feel well, you should describe your ..... to the doctor.
2. There is a good ..... for contemporary art across the street.
3. A telescope enables ..... s to observe the stars.
4. It is often impossible for people with ..... to climb stairs.
5. In our Maths exam, we have to write down our ..... as well as the answers.

TEACHER OF ENGLISH  
JAMAL SAHBI  
0773762600

## Revision A / WB , pages 29- 30

### MODEL ANSWERS

#### Page 29, exercise 1

1. nine hundred years ago
2. Scientists named an asteroid after him in honour of his great contributions to astronomy.

#### Page 29, exercise 2

1. medicine
2. He was 31 when he started writing, and he wrote at least 80 original books.
3. There is a statue of him in Cordoba, Al-Andalus.

#### Page 29, exercises 3

Writing , the world wide web

#### Page 29, exercises 4

**Writing is one of the most important invention throughout history . It allows people to communicate ideas across space and time . Before writing was invented , people depended on their memories to keep information , history , and their literature . Therefore , much of the human knowledge and used to fade away from memory. However, the invention of writing has enabled people to keep the experiences and progress they have made. In this way , people began to gather knowledge constantly and transmit it to the coming generation.**

#### Page 29, exercise 5

1. d 2. b 3. b 4. c

#### Page 30, exercise 6

1. It was the Egyptians that/who built the pyramids.
2. Ali is planning to finish his project tonight.
3. London, which is the capital of the UK, is a huge city.

#### Page 30, exercise 7

1. to go 2. have been waiting 3. to tell 4. be raining 5. had helped

#### Page 30, exercise 8

1. textiles 2. equipment 3. ailment 4. fund

#### Page 30, exercise 9

**Mathematics:** arithmetic; calculations; geometry

**Medical matters:** disabilities; symptoms; allergies

**People:** astronomer; polymath; physicist

**The arts:** gallery; textiles; ceramics

#### Page 30, exercise 10

1. symptoms 2. gallery 3. astronomer 4. disabilities 5. calculations

## Test A (Modules 1–3 ) WB , pages 58- 59

### Reading

Read the following text carefully, and then answer all the questions that follow.

**A.** There are five medical schools in Jordan, each one based at a university. All five schools offer a six-year programme, which is designed to produce top-quality doctors.

هناك 5 كليات للطب في الأردن, كل واحدة مقرها في جامعة. كل الكليات الخمس توفر برنامج مدته 6 سنوات والذي صمم بهدف تخريج أطباء ذوي كفاءة عالية.

**B.** For the first three years, the students follow a programme of academic study, which includes compulsory, as well as elective courses. These first three years are known as the 'pre-clinical stage'.

على مدار السنوات الثلاث الأولى, الطلبة يتبعون برنامج الدراسة الأكاديمية, والذي يشمل مقررات إلزامية و أخرى اختيارية.السنوات الثلاث الأولى هذه تعرف باسم مرحلة ما قبل السريرية .

**C.** Years four, five and six, or the 'clinical stage', are much more practical, although there is still plenty of theory too. The students spend time in different hospital departments.

At this stage, the students deal with patients directly, all the time being supervised by senior doctors.

السنوات الرابعة و الخامسة و السادسة أو المرحلة السريرية هي فترة عملية أكثر , على الرغم من انه لا يزال هناك الكثير من الدراسة النظرية أيضا . الطلاب يمضون الوقت في أقسام المستشفى المختلفة . في هذه المرحلة , يتعامل الطلاب مع المرضى مباشرة . كل هذه الفترة تكون تحت إشراف كبار الأطباء.

**D.** The final assessment is a very thorough series of written and practical examinations. Successful students are awarded a Bachelor of Medicine and Surgery degree.

التقييم النهائي عبارة عن سلسلة شاملة جدا من الامتحانات الخطية و العملية . الطلاب الناجحون يمنحون درجة البكالوريوس في الطب و الجراحة.

**A. Decide if these sentences are true or false. Correct the false sentences.**

(10 marks)

1. The medical schools in Jordan are based at five different universities.

2. Some courses during the first three years are optional.

3. During the clinical stage, students spend all of their time on their practical skills in hospital departments.

4. Students deal with patients from the very beginning of their course.

5. The tests at the end of the course are practical examinations.

**B. The text has four paragraphs. In which paragraph (A–D) can you find information about the following? (5 marks)**

1. the form that the final exams take: .....
2. the length of a medical degree: .....
3. the content of the second half of a medical degree: .....
4. the name of the stage before the clinical stage: .....
5. the name of the degree that students receive if they succeed: .....

**C. Complete the following summary with words from the text. (5 marks)**

There are five medical schools in Jordan. They all follow the same six-year programme. In the first half, known as the (1) ....., students have to take certain courses and can choose others. In the second half, which is the (2) ....., besides continuing to study theory, students spend time practising in different hospital (3)..... . (4)..... guide the students in dealing with the patients. Throughout the period of study, students are (5) ..... in different ways.

**USE OF ENGLISH: (10 marks)**

**Complete the text with the correct form of each word in brackets. You may need to use more than one word to fill in the gaps. (10 marks)**

**a.** The bullet train or Shinkansen is a highspeed rail system that (1)..... (serve) as the core of Japan’s rail transportation network. Shinkansen (2)..... (link) the major cities of Japan since it (3)..... (first introduce) in 1964 CE. At the moment, the network (4)..... (expand) with newer, faster and more environmentally-friendly trains navigating through the country’s mountains.

**b.** The London Underground, which(5) ..... (know) as *The Tube*, is one of the most famous underground rail systems in the world. *The Tube*, which (6) .....(get) its name from the shape of the system’s tunnels, (7)..... (serve) commuters since1863 CE. It is also one of the biggest networks, as it (8)..... (currently run) over 408 km and 275 stations across London. There are plans to build at least10 more stations in the near future!

**c.** The Shanghai Maglev Train is one of the fastest trains in the world; its speed (9)..... (record) as 431 km per hour! The train takes only seven minutes and 20 seconds to bring travellers from Pudong International Airport to Longyang Road Station, which (10)..... (be) about 30 km away.

### Test A (Modules 1–3 ) WB , pages 58- 59

#### MODEL ANSWERS

#### READING

- A. 1. True 2. True 3. False. There is still plenty of theory, too. 4. False. Students deal with patients during the last three years of the programme. 5. False. They are both practical and written examinations.  
B. 1. paragraph D 2. paragraph A 3. paragraph C 4. paragraph B 5. paragraph D  
C. 1. pre-clinical stage 2. clinical stage 3. departments 4. senior doctors 5. assessed

#### USE OF ENGLISH

- A. 1. serves 2. has linked 3. was first introduced 4. is expanding 5. is known 6. got 7. has served/has been serving 8. currently runs/is currently running 9. has been recorded 10. is

## Reading

Read the following text carefully, and then answer all the questions that follow.

**A. Can you think of a medicine that is very effective and is fun, free and very easy to**

**administer? You may be surprised by the answer ... It is laughter.**

هل بإمكانك أن تفكر بدواء فعالة جدا و تبعث على المرح , مجانية و تسهل إدارتها ؟ ربما تتفاجيء بالإجابة ..... إنها الضحك .

**B. Laughter is contagious. If people sitting near you start to laugh, it is very difficult not to**

**Join in. When you start laughing with other people, you feel relaxed and friendly towards**

**them. In fact, if you laugh out loud, all the muscles in your body relax and stay that way for**

**up to three-quarters of an hour. It is a great way to remove stress.**

الضحك معدي . إذا جلس الناس بالقرب منك ليبدوا الضحك , من الصعب أن لا تشاركهم . عندما تبدأ الضحك مع الآخرين , تشعر بالارتياح و الود تجاههم . في الواقع , إذا ضحكت بصوت مرتفع , فإن كل العضلات في جسمك تسترخي و تبقى بهذا الشكل لمدة ثلاثة أرباع الساعة . إنها طريقة رائعة للتخلص من التوتر.

**C. There are chemicals in your body called endorphins. These make your body feel good**

**and help to reduce pain and tiredness. Laughter releases these endorphins and makes**

**you feel a lot better. That's not the only advantage of laughter. It can also improve your**

**immune system, which protects your body against disease. Your body produces proteins,**

**called antibodies, to help it fight illnesses and infections. When you laugh, the number of**

**antibodies increases. Another benefit of laughter is that it can protect your heart.**

**When you laugh, blood starts flowing round your body more efficiently, and this can help prevent heart attacks.**

هناك مواد كيميائية في جسمك تسمى الاندروفين . هذه تجعل جسمك يشعر بحالة جيدة و يساعد على تقليل الألم و التوتر . الضحك يطلق الاندروفين و يجعلك تشعر بشكل أفضل بكثير . هذه ليست الايجابية للضحك . يمكنه أيضا إن يحسن نظام المناعة خاصتك , الذي يحمي جسمك ضد الأمراض . جسمك ينتج بروتينات تسمى أجسام مضادة , لمساعدته على مقاومة الأمراض و العدوى . عندما تضحك , يزداد عدد الأجسام المضادة . فائدة أخرى للضحك هي انه يحمي القلب . عندما تضحك , يبدأ الدم بالتدفق حول جسمك بفعالية اكبر , و هذا يساعد على منع النوبات القلبية .

**D. So not only does laughter make you feel happy, it's also very good for your health.**

**My advice is to start laughing!**

لذلك الضحك لا يجعلك سعيدا فقط, لكنه أيضا جيد جدا لصحتك. نصيحتي هي أن تبدي بالضحك

**A. Answer the following questions about the text.**

**(5 marks)**

1. How is laughter contagious?

.....  
.....

2. What is the function of endorphins?

.....  
.....

3. What is the difference between endorphins and antibodies?

.....  
.....

4. What are three benefits of laughter?

.....  
.....

5. How can laughter protect your heart?

.....  
.....

**B. The text has four paragraphs. In which paragraph(A–D) can you find information about the following? (10 marks)**

1. chemicals in your body: .....

2. the author's recommendation: .....

3. what happens to the muscles in your body when you laugh: .....

4. three benefits of laughing: .....

5. a pleasant surprise about laughing: .....

6. how your body fights illness: .....

7. an organ in your body that laughter is particularly good for: .....

8. the 'infectiousness' of laughter: .....

9. stress reduction: .....

10. how laughter affects your relationships with others: .....

**C. Complete the following summary with words from the text. (5 marks)**

Laughter is a good and free medicine for people. It relieves (1) ..... and creates a (2) .....atmosphere. When you laugh, the body produces endorphins to decrease (3) .....and fatigue. It also creates antibodies to fight illnesses and (4)..... . In addition, the blood circulates better and decreases the possibility of heart (5)..... .

**USE OF ENGLISH :**

(30 marks)

**A. These sentences have the wrong word in bold. Correct them by using one of the words in the box below. (5 marks)**

**antibodies , artificially-created , blog calculations, desalination**

1. **Textiles** plants are becoming a popular method of providing water for people living in areas that have little fresh water. ....
2. Many megaprojects consist of **sceptical** cities, which will be built according to principles of sustainable living. ....
3. I came across a **conventional** post the other day. It was discussing the importance of traditional crafts in our modern-day society. ....
4. Homoeopathy cannot produce **ceramics** needed to protect against childhood diseases. ....
5. One of the earliest computers took as long as 25 minutes to do simple mathematical **demonstrations**. ....

**B. Choose the correct word to complete the sentences. (5 marks)**

1. My grandparents gave me a **fountain pen / pedestrian** for my birthday, and I am learning calligraphy now.
2. Some **ailments / inoculations** can be treated effectively with homoeopathic remedies.
3. When there is not enough rainfall to grow crops, the ground must be **irrigated / publicised**.
4. I enjoy painting and sculpture so I decided to do a degree in **Fine Arts / craftsmanship**.
5. Elderly people often suffer from **dementia / acupuncture**, which is difficult to treat.

**C. Complete the text below with the correct form of each verb in brackets. You may need to use more than one word. (10 marks)**

Some advertisements say that you can (1) ..... (**learn**) a language in a month; others promise that a basic knowledge (2) ..... (**be**) yours in 24 hours. There are language-learning courses that promise excellent results with very little effort, and even less time! However, these advertisements gave many people the wrong idea, and after some people (3) ..... (**struggle**) for months to achieve a good level, they (4) ..... (**begin**) wondering what had gone wrong. A complaint (5) ..... (**recently make**) against Learn Assist, a language school chain, and the company (6) ..... (**force**) to remove its claim that its technique is better than any other method. The Managing Director of Learn Assist said "While we still believe that what we say is true, we accept it is best for us to change our advert. However, the fact (7) ..... (**remain**), if you (8) ..... (**spend**) three hours per day for five weeks on our language course you (9) ..... (**speak**) the language very soon. What we (10) ..... (**do**) next time is make this clearer in the advert."

**Test A (Modules 1–3 ) TB , pages 148- 149**

**MODEL ANSWERS**

**READING**

- A.** 1. If people sitting near you start laughing, you end up joining in.  
2. Endorphins make your body feel good and help to reduce pain and tiredness.  
3. Endorphins are chemicals in your body that are released through laughter to help to reduce pain and tiredness, whereas antibodies are proteins that help the body to fight illnesses and infections.  
4. Answers can include: Laughter can remove stress, reduce pain and tiredness, improve your immune system and protect your heart.  
5. It can protect the heart by making blood flow round your body more efficiently, and therefore prevents heart attacks.

- B.** 1. paragraph C 2. paragraph D 3. paragraph B 4. paragraph C 5. paragraph A 6. paragraph C  
7. paragraph C 8. paragraph B 9. paragraph B 10. paragraph B

- C.** 1. stress 2. friendly/relaxed 3. pain 4. infections 5. attacks

**USE OF ENGLISH**

- A.** 1. Desalination 2. artificially-created 3. blog 4. antibodies 5. calculations

- B.** 1. fountain pen 2. ailments 3. irrigated 4. Fine Arts 5. dementia

- C.** 1. learn 2. will be 3. had struggled 4. began 5. was recently made 6. was forced 7. remains  
8. spend/spent 9. will/would speak 10. will do

TEACHER OF ENGLISH  
JAWAL SAH  
0777376260

### Pronunciation: Using the International Phonetic Alphabet – IPA (1)

7/ SB, page 17 :

Listen to the words. Match them with their phonetic transcriptions.

1 /'æŋɡri/

2 /kɑ:m/

3 /skʊ:l/

4 /'eksəsaɪz/

5 /ɪm'pɔ:təns/

a importance

b school

c exercise

d angry

e calm

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. .... 5. ....

1. d angry 2. e. calm 3. b school 4. c exercise 5. a importance

### Pronunciation: Using the International Phonetic Alphabet – IPA (2)

9/ SB, page 23 :

Listen to these words. Write them using the IPA. Check your answers in a dictionary.

1. technology / .....

2. audience / .....

3. healthy / .....

4. carrying / .....

1 /tek'nɒlədʒi/ 2 /'ɔ:diəns/ 3 /'helθi/ 4 /'kæriɪŋ/

### Pronunciation: Minimal pairs (1)

8/ SB, page 31 :

Listen to each pair of words. Which sounds do you hear? Answer the questions.

a. Which words contain the **p** sound /p/ and which contain the **b**. sound /b/?

Write 1 (/p/) or 2 (/b/) for each word.

**pen, bend, back, pack, rope, robe**

.....

b. Which words contain the **n** sound /n/ and which contain the **ɪŋ** sound /ŋ/?

Write 1. (/n/) or 2. (/ŋ/) for each word.

**song, sun, singing, India, wing, win**

.....

a. 1. pen, pack, rope 2. bend, back, robe

b. 1 sun, India, win 2. song, singing, wing

## Pronunciation: Minimal pairs (2)

6/ SB, page 39 :

Listen to each pair of words. Which sounds do you hear? Answer the questions.

a. Which words contain the **i** sound /**i**/ and which contain the **ee** sound/**i:**/?

Write 1. (/i/) or 2. (/i:/) for each word.

**been, fit, dream, give, middle, medium**

.....  
.....

b. Which words contain the **a** sound / **æ** / and which contain the **ar** sound/**a:**/?

Write 1. (/æ /) or 2. (/a:/) for each word.

**and , bath, car ,back, half ,ran**

.....  
.....

c. Which words contain the **e** sound /**e**/ and which contain the **ir** sound/**ɜ:**/?

Write 1. (/e/) or 2. (/ɜ:/) for each word.

**best, birthday, egg, world, girl, deaf**

.....  
.....

a. 1 fit, give, middle 2. been, dream, medium

b. 1 and, back, ran bath .2, car, half

c. 1 best, egg, deaf 2. birthday, world, girl

TEACHER OF ENGLISH  
JAWAL SAH  
0777376260

## PRONUNCIATION TABLE

### Appendix 2: Pronunciation table

Consonants			Vowels		
Symbol	Key word		Symbol	Key word	
p	pen	short	ɪ	bit	
b	back		e	bed	
t	ten		æ	cat	
d	day		ɒ	dog (Br E)	
k	key		ʌ	cut	
g	get		ʊ	put	
f	fat		ə	about	
v	view		i	happy	
θ	thing		u	actuality	
ð	then		long	i:	sheep
s	soon			ɑ:	father
z	zero			ɔ:	four
ʃ	ship			u:	boot
ʒ	pleasure			ɜ:	bird (Br E)
h	hot	diphthongs		eɪ	make
x	loch			aɪ	lie
tʃ	cheer		ɔɪ	boy	
dʒ	jump		əʊ	note (Br E)	
m	sum		aʊ	now	
n	sun		ɪə	real	
ŋ	sung		eə	hair (Br E)	
w	wet	ʊə	sure (Br E)		
l	let	en	actual		
r	red	iə	peculiar (Br E)		
j	yet				

### Special signs

/ ' /	shows main stress
/ , /	shows secondary stress
/ R /	means that there is a brief pause in the word and no sound comes out until the next letter is pronounced
(Br E)	British English pronunciation

## I Remember, I Remember

Thomas Hood (1799 CE–1845 CE) was a British poet and humorist (a humorist is someone who writes comedy).

I remember, I remember,  
The house where I was born,  
The little window where the sun came  
peeping in at morn;  
He never came a wink too soon,  
Nor brought too long a day,  
But now, I often wish the night  
Had borne my breath away!

I remember, I remember,  
The roses, red and white,  
The vi'lets, and the lily- cups,  
Those flowers made of light!  
The lilacs where the robin built,  
And where my brother set  
The laburnum on his birthday, —  
The tree is living yet!

I remember, I remember,  
Where I was used to swing,  
And thought the air must rush as fresh  
To swallows on the wing;  
My spirit flew in feathers then,  
That is so heavy now,  
And summer pools could hardly cool  
The fever on my brow!

I remember, I remember,  
The fir trees dark and high;  
I used to think their slender tops  
Were close against the sky:  
It was a childish ignorance,  
But now 'tis little joy  
To know I'm farther off from heav'n  
Than when I was a boy.

إننا أتذكر , إننا أتذكر  
البيت الذي ولدت فيه  
النافذة الصغيرة حيث الشمس  
كانت تختلس النظر صباحا,  
لم تتلشى أبدا بسرعة,  
و لم تشرق طويلا,  
لكن الآن, أتمنى أن الليل  
قد اخذ أنفاسي بعيدا!

أتذكر, أتذكر  
الأزهار, حمراء و بيضاء,  
و بنفسجية و أتذكر فناجين الزنبق,  
هذه الأزهار النورانية!  
و أزهار اليلك حيث,  
طائر الحناء بنى عشه,  
و حيث زرع أخي شجرة,  
يوم عيد ميلاده,  
الشجرة ما زالت حية حتى الآن!

أتذكر أتذكر  
حيث كنت اتارجح,  
معتقدا أن الهواء سيمر منعشا  
مداعبا أجنحة طيور السنونو,  
روحي طارت بأجنحة حينها,  
لكنها ثقيلة جدا الآن,  
و برك الصيف يصعب أن تطفئ  
الحمى على أجفاني!

أتذكر أتذكر  
أشجار التنوب داكنة و عالية,  
كنت أظن أن قممها النحيلة  
كانت قريبة من السماء:  
كانت تلك براءة-جهل الطفولة,  
لكن الآن أنها متعة قليلة  
بان اعرف بانني بعيد عن السماء  
اكثر مما كنت طفلا.

peep	يختلس النظر	swallow	طائر السنونو
morn	الصباح	feathers	ريش
vi 'lets /lily/lilac	أنواع ورود	fever	حمى
laburnum	شجر الأبنوس	slender	نحيل
swing	ينأرجح	ignorance	عدم معرفة
personification	تشخيص	stanza	مقطع من القصيدة

It is a reflective poem in which the poet is looking back at his childhood, and it is rather sentimental.

In the poem, Hood initially portrays his childhood and the house where he was born. Those beautiful days where the sun rays came and beautiful days were there in the proportion. However in the last two lines, he says about his present situation and how he wished the night had tolerated his breath.

The second stanza describes about the days of his childhood, where he sees and feels the beautiful colors of roses and lilies and the lilacs and talks about a tree that he and his brother spent days even on his brother's day.

However in the third stanza, he gives a combination feel of his past and present. He says about playing with a swing and enjoying the breeze and wind and he was all energetic and high in sprits and when he recalls those times with his present, he does not even have the energy to lift a brow. The pool water was very cool and enjoyable, but now it is not even sufficient to cool his fever.

The last stanza says that he remembers how he used to think in the wildest manners about tress and their heights that they reached the sky which was so childish and now as a frown up, he misses all those thoughts and days and he understand that nothing is attainable that he desires for at this point of time.

The poet wishes to get back his childhood days and the energy and be free from pain that he suffers now as a grown up.

A wonderful poem that gives a high contrast to the childhood days and experience, a world with beautiful thoughts and an adult world filled with regrets and losses and pain.

In the first stanza, Hood speaks about his childhood and where he was born with happy memories. However, the last two lines suggest that his present situation is not very good – perhaps he is ill and near death. (In fact, the poet was unwell when he wrote this.)

The second stanza is about his childhood and it talks about happy memories.

In the third stanza, there is a contrast between the past and the present. He says that he was in high spirits as a young person (My spirit flew in feathers then on line 21), which contrasts with how he feels now (That is so heavy now on line 22).

In the fourth stanza, he thinks of how he had childish thoughts as a young person, and wants to go back to those times rather than be as he is now (lines 29–32).

## Literary terms

**Mood:** in poetry refers to the general tone or attitude that the poet aims at creating.

**Rhythm:** in poetry, explain that it refers to the arrangement of words in a regular pattern for each line.

**Onomatopoeia:** when the sound of the word read aloud is similar to its meaning, e.g. fizz, pop, growl

**Personification:** is to give human qualities to nonhuman.

## Literary / Rhetorical devices in the poem:

### 1. Personification:

the sun came peeping in at morn

'I often wish the night / Had borne my breath away!

My spirit flew in feathers then

Summer pools could hardly cool / The fever on my brow!

### 2. Onomatopoeic words:

*Peep* (line 4)/ *rush* (line 19)/ *swing* (line 18)/ *fresh* (line 19)

## Vocabulary

### Answer the questions

#### 1. Why does the poet describe the sun as peeping in (line 4)?

لمادا يصف الشاعر الشمس بأنها تدخل خلسة؟

It suggests that it slowly got brighter and brighter: at first it wasn't very bright.

هذا يشير إلى ان الشمس تشرق ببطء في البداية لم تكن مشرقة جدا.

#### 2. How the word wing (line 20) and the phrase flew in feathers (line 21) help us to work out the meaning of swallows (line 20)?

كيف تساعدنا الكلمة جناح و شبه الجملة طارت بريش على معرفة معنى كلمة سنونو؟

We know that wings and feathers are both things that birds have, and that they fly so a swallow must be a kind of bird.

نعرف أن الأجنحة و الريش كلاهما شئنان تمتلكهما الطيور, و هي تطير, لذلك لابد و أن يكون احد أنواع الطيور.

## Comprehension

#### 1. How does the poet contrast his memories of the past with the present day in the third stanza? Refer to words in bold in your answer.

كيف يقارن الشاعر ذكرياته في الماضي مع الحاضر في المقطع الثالث من القصيدة؟ اشر إلى الكلمات بالغامق في إجابتك.

He remembers his childhood being very happy (my spirit flew in feathers then) but now he is not so happy (that is so heavy now). He also remembers the summer pools that he probably used to enjoy cooling off and swimming in on hot summer days/, but says that he is so ill now that they wouldn't be able to cool him down (and summer pools could hardly cool/ the fever on my brow!)

يتذكر طفولته بأنها كانت سعيدة (روحي كانت تطير حينها لكنه الآن ليس سعيدا كثيرا (ذلك ثقيل جدا) أيضا يتذكر برك الصيف التي ربما كان يستمتع بها, لكنه يقول انه الآن مريض جدا لدرجة أنها لا يمكن أن تطفئ حرارته (و برك الصيف يصعب أن تبرد الحمى في أجفاني)

#### 2. In line(29), the poet refers to his "childish ignorance". What was he ignorant about?

في سطر 29 الشاعر يشير إلى جهل طفولته ماذا كان يجهل؟

The poet was ignorant about the size of the world; he used to think that the tops of the fir trees nearly touched the sky. The poet probably thought this because he was short and the trees were so tall that he thought they must touch the sky.

الشاعر كان جاهلا لحجم العالم. كان يعتقد أن قمم أشجار التنوب كادت تلامس السماء. الشاعر ظن ذلك ربما لأنه كان قصير القامة و الأشجار كانت عالية جدا لدرجة أنه ظن أنها تلامس السماء.

### **Analysis**

**Discuss these questions in pairs.**

**1. In the second stanza, the poet expresses amazement that a tree(where my brother set/ the laburnum on his birthday)is still living, many years after it was planted. What does this tell us about the poet's views of our relationship with nature?**

في المقطع الثاني يعبر الشاعر عن الدهشة بان الشجرة التي زرعها شقيقه ما زالت حية بعد سنوات من زراعتها ماذا يخبرنا هذا عن نظرة الشاعر عن علاقتنا بالطبيعة؟

He is amazed by how trees can live so long, whereas people come and go. The poet seems to receive a great deal of pleasure from nature.

الشاعر مندهش كيف تعيش الأشجار طويلا بينما البشر يأتون و يذهبون يبدو أن الشاعر تلقى الكثير من السعادة من الطبيعة.

**2. The last three lines of the third and fourth stanza suggest that the author has lost his youthful joy and optimism. Do you agree with this view point ?Justify your answer.**

آخر ثلاثة اسطر من المقطع الرابع تشير إلى أن الكاتب قد فقد سعادة و تفاعل الشباب هل توافق على وجهة النظر هذه؟ برر إجابتك

I agree with this viewpoint because the author's past was happier than now. (My spirit..... is so heavy now).However, the poet is worried about what will happen after his death, as a child he was closer to heaven than he is now(to know that I'm farther off from heav`n- than when I was a boy)

أوافق ماضي المؤلف أكثر سعادة من الآن(روحي ثقيلة)على أي حال الشاعر قلق على ماذا سيحدث له بعد موته في الماضي كان اقرب إلى السماء(الله)أكثر من الآن(أنا ابعد عن السماء- أكثر مما كنت طفلا)

### **W.B , page ,56**

**1. Read lines 3-6. What rhetorical device does the poet use to describe the sun? Quote any other examples of this device from the poem.**

اقرأ الأسطر من 3 إلى 6 ما الأسلوب البلاغي الذي يستخدمه الشاعر لوصف الشمس؟ اقتبس أمثلة أخرى على هذا الأسلوب من القصيدة.

Personification is used to describe the sun.

التشخيص يستخدم لوصف الشمس.

Other examples:

- I often wish the night\had borne my breath away!
- My spirit flew in feathers then.
- Summer pools could hardly cool\the fever on my brow!

**2. Read line 19. The word rush is an example of onomatopoeia. Are there any other examples of onomatopoeia within the poem?**

اقرأ السطر 19. كلمة (يندفع) تعتبر مثالا على اونوموتوبيا(تسمية الأشياء بأصواتها). هل يوجد أي أمثلة أخرى في القصيدة عليها؟

1. swing 2. Fresh

**3. Why do you think the poet might be "farther off from heav`n" now? Discuss all possible meanings of this statement.**

لماذا برأيك قد يكون الشاعر بعيدا عن السماء (الله) الآن؟ ناقش المعاني المحتملة .

I think that the poet is an adult now and has lost the "childish ignorance" that he had when he was younger.

اعتقد بان الشاعر الآن شخص كبير وقد فقد براءة الطفولة.

## All the World's a Stage

by William Shakespeare (from *As you like it*, Act II Scene VI)

All the world's a stage,

### Boyhood stage

And all the men and women merely players;  
They have their exits and their entrances,  
And one man in his time plays many parts, ...

### At first, the infant,

Mewling and puking in the nurse's arms.

### Then the whining schoolboy, with his satchel

And shining morning face, creeping like snail  
Unwillingly to school. ...

### Then a soldier,

Full of strange oaths and bearded like the pard,  
Jealous in honor, sudden and quick in quarrel,  
Seeking the bubble reputation  
Even in the cannon's mouth.

### And then the justice,

In fair round belly with good capon lined,  
With eyes severe and beard of formal cut,  
Full of wise saws and modern instances;  
And so he plays his part.

### Old age stage

... Into the lean and slippered pantaloon,  
With spectacles on nose and pouch on side;  
His youthful hose, well saved, a world too wide  
For his shrunk shank, and his big manly voice,  
Turning again toward childish treble, pipes  
And whistles in his sound.

### Last scene of all,

That ends this strange eventful history,  
Is second childishness and mere oblivion,  
Sans teeth, sans eyes, sans taste, sans everything.

ما العالم إلا مسرح  
مرحلة الطفولة المبكرة  
وكل الرجال و النساء مجرد ممثلون  
لهم مداخلهم و مخرجهم  
و الرجل في عمره يؤدي عدة ادوار

أولها كطفل  
مرحلة الطفولة المتأخرة  
بيكي و يرفس بين ذراعي حاضنته  
ثم ابن المدرسة المنتحب بحقيبته  
ووجهه البريء المشع يزحف  
كالقوقعة على مضض إلى المدرسة  
مرحلة الرجولة المبكرة

ثم كجندي  
مفعم بوعود غريبة ملتحي كالنمر  
غيور على الشرف مفاجئ و سريع  
في القتال سعيا وراء السمعة  
الوهمية حتى في فم المدفع  
مرحلة الرجولة المتأخرة- وسط العمر

ثم الحكمة-القضاء  
بكرش كبير من تناول الكثير من اللحم  
و بعينين قاسيتين و بلحية جميلة  
غنيا بالحكمة و الأقوال الحكيمة  
و هكذا يؤدي دوره

مرحلة الكهولة- نهاية العمر  
الرجل العجوز الآن بخفة الداخلي  
و النظارات على انفه و حقيبة على  
جانبه لحفظ ماله العالم أوسع  
من ساقه المنكمشة, و صوته  
الرجولي الضخم يعود ثانية عاليا

كصوت طفل صغير  
آخر جميع المشاهد  
ما يقضى على هذا التاريخ الحافل  
هو طفولة ثانية و مجرد نسيان  
بدون أسنان و بدون عيون و بدون لسان و بدون إي شيء

stage	مرحلة	jealous	غيور
merely	ببساطة	quarrel	شجار
exit	موت	cannon	مدفع
entrance	حياة	justice	العدالة
satchel	حقيبة مدرسيه	beard	لحية
Infant	رضيع	pantaloon	الرجل المسن
unwillingly	بلا رغبة	pouch	كيس
oath	قسم - يمين	spectacles	نظارات
shrunk	متقلص	sans	بلا - بدون
oblivion	نسيان	simile	تشبيه

Shakespeare was an English playwright and poet (1564 CE–1616 CE), who is widely regarded as the greatest writer in the English language. The excerpt is part of one of the most frequently quoted speeches in the whole of Shakespearean literature. The speech takes place in a forest, and it is spoken by a man named Jacques, who is a thinker and philosopher. The other characters try to tease him about his cynical outlook on life. This speech is his reply.

The man in the poem goes through these stages all expressed in a sardonic when not bitter tone:

**Infant:** In this stage he is a helpless baby and knows little.

**Schoolboy:** It is in that stage of life that he begins to go to school. He is unwilling to leave the protected environment of his home as he is still not confident enough to exercise his own discretion.

**Soldier:** He is very easily aroused and is hot-headed. He is always working towards making a reputation for himself, however short-lived it may be, even at the cost of foolish risks.

**Justice :** ( late adulthood) in this stage he thinks he has acquired wisdom through the many experiences he has had in life, and is likely to impart it. He has reached a stage where he has gained prosperity and social status. He becomes vain and begins to enjoy the finer things of life.

**Old Age:** He is a shell of his former self — physically and mentally. He begins to become the joke of others. He loses his firmness and assertiveness, and shrinks in stature and personality.

**1. In lines 10-14, the poet describes the soldier`s life. Which word refers to a weapon used by soldiers?**

في الأسطر 10-14 الشاعر يصف حياة الجندي ما الكلمة التي تشير إلى سلاح يستخدمه الجنود؟

Cannon مدفع

**2. Compare lines 8 and 11. How do they convey the images of a boy and a soldier?**

قارن السطرين 8 و 11 كيف يعكسان صور الولد و الجندي؟

The schoolboy is represented as innocent and clean with his “shining morning face” in line 8. This is contrasted strongly with the soldier in line 11, who is” bearded like the leopard”

يتم تصوير الولد كطفل بريء و نظيف في السطر الثامن على عكس الجندي تماما في سطر 11 فهو ملتحي كالنمر.

**3. Describe in your own words, the image that the poet has created of the old man (lines 20-25). What is the old man wearing? How do his clothes fit him? What does his voice sound like?**

صف بكلماتك الخاصة الصورة التي إنشأها الشاعر في الأسطر 20-25 للرجل عندما يصبح عجوزا ماذا يلبس الرجل العجوز؟ كيف تلاؤمه ملبسه؟ كيف يبدو صوته؟

He is now thin and stays indoors (slipper refers to footwear that people wear indoors, and pantaloons means old man in this context). He wears spectacles and has his bag for carrying his money with him. His legs have grown thinner, so his trousers do not fit well and his voice has become high again like a child`s.

هو الآن نحيل و يعيش وراء الأبواب يرتدي نظارات و حقيبة لحمل ماله معه أصبحت قدمه نحيلة أكثر و أقل من اتساع بنطاله و أصبح صوته عاليا ثانية كصوت الطفل.

**4. Which word in “man`s last stage” sums up the last line of the speech:**

**Sans teeth, sans eyes, sans taste, sans everything?**

أي كلمة في آخر مرحلة من مراحل الإنسان تلخص آخر سطر في الخطاب: بدون أسنان بدون عيون بدون لسان بدون إي شيء؟

Sans meaning “without”, so at the end the person has nothing- he can`t eat because he has no teeth, he can`t see and he loses his sense of taste.

تعني بدون، في النهاية لا يبقى للإنسان إي شيء. لا يستطيع أن يأكل لأنه ليس له أسنان ولا أن يرى و يفقد حاسة الذوق.

### **Comprehension**

**1. What are the five stages of a human`s life, according to the speech? list them in correct order.**

ما هي المراحل الخمس لحياة الإنسان حسب الخطاب.

1. babyhood (infant) 2. Childhood (the schoolboy) 3. Early adulthood (the soldier)

4. Late adulthood/ middle age (the justice) 5. Old age (second babyhood/ childhood)

1. رضيع 2. طفولة 3. الرجولة المبكرة 4. الرجولة المتوسطة 5. الكهولة

**2. What does the playwright suggest about the soldier, in lines 10 to 14? Choose the correct answer and justify it.**

ماذا يقول الكاتب المسرحي عن الجندي في الأسطر 10-14 اختر الاجابه و قل لماذا؟

**A. his life is short**

**B. he does not like conflict**

**C. he is aggressive and gets angry or violent easily.**

-حياته قصيرة - لا يحب القتال - عدواني و يغضب بسهولة

The soldier is “jealous in honor, sudden and quick in quarrel”. He is also “seeking the bubble reputation” (he does things that make him look good even if they are pointless) “even in the cannon`s mouth” (even if it means standing in front of guns.

الإجابة الثالثة الجندي الغيور على شرفه مفاجئ و سريع في القتال سعيا وراء السمعة الوهمية و مستعد للوقوف أمام المدفع اجل ذلك (حتى في فم المدفع)

3. How does the playwright describe the appearance of the middle aged person?

كيف يصف الكاتب المسرحي مظهر الإنسان المتوسط العمر؟

The middle aged person is fat from eating too much “round belly “on line 16” he has got hard eyes and a neat beard and knows lots of wise sayings.

الإنسان متوسط العمر سمين من الأكل الكثير "كرش كبير" له عيون قاسية و لحية جميلة و يعرف الكثير من أقوال الحكمة.

4. Look at the phrase in bold on lines 19 and 26 of the speech. How is the life of person compared to an actor in the theatre?

ادرس العبارات المكتوبة الخط الغامض كيف يصف الكاتب الإنسان في أول مرحلة و آخر مرحلة من حياته؟

A “part” is a role in a play and the expression is “to play a part”. The last scene is the end of the play and Shakespeare is connecting this to the end of life.

Part هو نهاية المسرحية و شكسبير يربط هذا في نهاية الحياة. the last scene و التعبير يؤدي دورا to play a part هو دور في المسرحية

5. How does the playwright describe the person in the first and last stage of life?

كيف يصف الكاتب المسرحي الإنسان في أول و آخر مرحلة من حياته؟

They are both like young children- the first one is a baby, but the second is an old person.

كلاهما طفل صغير الأول رضيع و الثاني كهل.

6. What does the playwright mean by the line, “this strange evenful history”? (line 27)

ماذا يعني الكاتب بالسطر "هذا التاريخ الحافل الغريب" سطر 27؟

He means that life can be strange with lots of things happening in it.

يعني أن الحياة قد تكون غريبة مع الكثير من الأشياء التي تحدث فيها.

### Ideas

3. Find a line from the speech that represents the following ideas.

1. Ageing 2. time 3. careers 4. Youth 5. Human life.

جد الأسطر التي تمثل الكهولة الزمن العمل الشباب الحياة الإنسانية

Ageing lines (22-25) time (26-27) careers (10-19) youth (5-9) humanlife (1-4)

4. Which stage of life is represented as the most positive, in your opinion? Discuss this with reference to the speech and the ideas in exercise 3.

برأيك أي مراحل الحياة يتم تقديمها بشكل ايجابي؟ ناقش هذا بالإشارة إلى الخطاب و سؤال 3

In my opinion, the most positive stage of life according to this speech is the justice because positive adjectives are used to describe it, such as “fair” and “wise”

برأيي أكثر مرحلة يتم تقديمها بشكل ايجابي هي مرحلة الحكمة ذلك لأنه يتم استخدام صفات ايجابية لوصفها مثل جميل و حكيم.

### Analysis

1. Which simile does the playwright use to describe the schoolboy as he walks to school?

ما هو التشبيه الذي يستخدمه الكاتب لوصف المدرس أثناء ذهابه مشيا إلى المدرسة؟

The poet uses “creeping like snail”, meaning going very slowly.

الكاتب يستخدم التشبيه يزحف كالفقعة بما يعني أنه بطيء جدا

Find another example of a simile in speech which two things are being compared?

جد تشبيها آخر في الخطاب ما الذي يتم مقارنتهما معا؟

Bearded like the pard”Shakespeare is comparing a soldier to a leopard.

ملتحي كالنمر شكسبير يقارن الجندي بالنمر.

3. In your opinion, which stage do you think the playwright believes to be the most positive?

برأيك أي مرحلة الكاتب يعتقد بأنها ايجابية؟

I think he believes middle age is the most positive, because when the person has become a judge, he`s full of wise sayings. He is also well fed and serious in manner and appearance.

تعتقد انه يعتقد أن مرحلة الرجولة المتوسطة هي الأكثر ايجابية لأنه عندما يصبح الإنسان قاضيا يكون مليئا بالحكمة و يأكل أحسن و جاد في سلوكه و مظهره.

4. Read the poem *I remember, I remember* again on page 81, and compare both authors` attitudes to childhood. In what ways do they differ? In what ways are they similar? Which one do you prefer?

اقرأ القصيدة أتذكر ص 81 ثانية و قارن موقف الكاتبين من الطفولة كيف يختلفان؟ كيف يتشابهان؟ أي الموقفين تفضل؟

The poet and the playwright have very different views of childhood. Firstly, the poet sees it as a positive time of life, whereas the playwright doesn't portray either the baby or the school boy very favorably. Playwright is generalizing.

الشاعر و الكاتب المسرحي مختلفان. أولا الشاعر يراها فترة ايجابية من الحياة بينما الكاتب المسرحي لا يصور الطفل و طالب المدرسة بشكل محبب. ثانيا الشاعر يتحدث عن طفولته الخاصة بينما الكاتب المسرحي يتحدث بشكل عام.

### Vocabulary

1/ WB, page 56

Put these vocabulary items under the headings 1-4. They do not have to go with the 'correct' person from the speech, but they should be appropriate.

ضع الكلمات في القائمة في الأسفل تحت العنوان المناسب . ليس هناك حاجة لأن تكون مع الشخص المناسب من الخطاب , لكن يجب أن تكون ملائمة

mewling	بكاء خفيف	puking	التقيأ	whining	صوت غير سار	creeping	يحبو
bearded	ملتح	lean	يعتمد	shrunk	يتقلص	Wise	حكيم
severe	قاسي	slipperd	ضيق	shining	نظيف	childish	يشبه الطفل

1. a schoolboy	
2. a middle-aged man	
3. a baby	
4. an old man	

1. whining, creeping, shining  
2. bearded, wise, severe

3. mewling, puking  
4. lean, shrunk, childish, slippered

## The Old Man and the Sea

by Ernest Hemingway

***Santiago is an old fisherman in Cuba, but for the last eighty-four days he hasn't caught any fish. His friend, a young fisherman named Manolin, helps him to bring in his empty boat every day.*** Manolin has been Santiago's fishing partner for years. Santiago had taught him all about fishing, and has done so since he was a boy of five years old. Now, the young man's parents want him to fish with a more **productive** partner.

سانتياغو صياد عجوز من كوبا، لكنه للأربع وثمانون يوما الماضية لم يصطد أي سمكة. صديقه صياد شاب اسمه مانولين، يساعده في جلب قاربه الفارغ كل يوم. مانولين شريك لسنتياغو في الصيد منذ سنين. سانتياغو علمه كل شيء عن الصيد منذ كان مانولين ولدا عمره خمس سنوات. الآن، والدا الشاب يريدان منه أن يصطاد مع شريك كسيب أكثر.

The next morning, Santiago leaves early and sails far out to sea to try his luck again. Eventually, he feels a bite on one of his **hooks**, and he works out that it must be a big fish, perhaps a marlin. The fish is strong, though, and does not come up to the surface. Instead, the fish swims away, **dragging** the old man and his boat along.

في الصباح التالي، سانتياغو يغادر مبكرا و يبحر بعيدا في البحر ليحرب حظه ثانية. أخيرا، يشعر بالطعم على إحدى صناراته، و يعتقد بأنها سمكة كبيرة، ربما سمكة المارلين. السمكة قوية لذلك لا تظهر على السطح. بدلا من ذلك تسبح بعيدا ساحبة الرجل العجوز و قاربه أماما.

This goes on until the sun goes down, and eventually Santiago can't see the land any more at all.

هذا يستمر حتى تغيب الشمس و أخيرا لا يستطيع سانتياغو رؤية البر بالمرّة.

As night falls, he wraps the fishing line around himself, and goes to sleep, leaving his left hand on the rope to wake him if the marlin **surfaces**. Soon, ***the old man is asleep, dreaming of the lions he used to see when he was a boy in Africa.***

عندما يهبط الليل يلف خيط الصيد حول نفسه و ينام، تاركا يده اليسار على الحبل ليوقظه إذا ظهرت المارلين على السطح. سريعا العجوز يغرق في النوم حالما بالأسود التي رآها عندما كان طفلا في إفريقيا.

Santiago is awoken in the night when he feels the marlin pulling on the line in his hand. The marlin leaps out of the water, and Santiago has to hold on to the line with all his strength to avoid being pulled into the sea.

سانتياغو يصحو ليلا عندما يشعر بان المارلين تشد الخيط من يده. المارلين تقفز من الماء و على سانتياغو أن يتمسك بالخيط بكل قوته حتى يتجنب سحبه إلى البحر.

***When he sees the fish at last, he is amazed by its size. After a long and difficult struggle, he manages to pull it closer to the boat and he kills it.***

عندما يرى السمكة أخيرا، يندهش بسبب حجمها. بعد صراع طويل و صعب يتمكن من سحبها قريبا من القارب و يقتلها.

Santiago ties the marlin's body to his boat and prepares to sail home. Before he reaches land, though, ***he is attacked by several sharks. He kills one with a harpoon and another with his knife. The blood in the water attracts more sharks. Santiago has to beat them away with a club and is badly injured himself.***

سانتياغو يربط جسم المارلين إلى قاربه و يستعد للإبحار إلى البيت. قبل أن يصل البر تهاجمه عدة اسماك قرش. يقتل إحداها برمح و أخرى بسكينه. الدم في الماء يجذب المزيد من القرش على سانتياغو أن يبعدها بهراوة فيصيب نفسه بجروح بليغة.

When he arrives back at the harbor, everyone is asleep. Arriving home, Santiago collapses on his bed in exhaustion and falls asleep.

عندما يعود إلى الميناء، الجميع نيام عندما يصل البيت بنهار على السرير متعبا و يفرق في النوم.

***The next morning, Manolin finds Santiago in his hut and cries over the old man's injuries.*** Manolin reassures Santiago that the great fish didn't beat him and that they will fish together again. He tells him that the old man still has much to teach him.

في الصباح التالي، مانولين يجد العجوز في كوخه و يبكي بسبب جراح الرجل العجوز. مانولين يؤكد لسانتياغو بان السمكة الضخمة لم تهزمه و بأنهما سيصطادان معا ثانية. يقول له بان لدى العجوز الكثير ليعلمه إياه.

That afternoon, some tourists see the marlin's skeleton and ask a waiter what it is. Trying to explain what happened to the marlin, the waiter replies, 'shark.' The tourists misunderstand and **assume** that is what the skeleton is. They don't realize that it is actually a marlin, the biggest fish ever caught in the village, at more than five metres long.

بعد الظهيرة بعض السانحين يرون هيكل المارلين العظمي و يسألون النادل ما هو. محاولا شرح ما حدث للمارلين، النادل يقول "أنها سمكة قرش". السانحون لا يفهمونه و يظنونه هيكل قرش. لا يدركون أنها مارلين بالفعل، أكبر سمكة تم اصطيادها في القرية، بطول أكثر من خمسة أمتار.

***Meanwhile, Santiago is sleeping and once again, dreaming of the lions he saw in Africa long ago, when he was young.***

في هذه الإثناء سانتياغو نائم، و ثانية يحلم بالأسود التي رآها في إفريقيا عندما كان صغيرا.

fisherman	صياد	wrap	يلف
partner	شريك	leap out	يقفز
eventually	و أخيرا	struggle	صراع
marlin	نوع سمك	injured	مجروح
collapse	ينهار	skeleton	هيكل عظمي
exhaustion	ارهاق	misunderstand	يسيء الفهم

***Ernest Hemingway*** was an American author (1899 CE–1961 CE) and this novel was written in 1952 CE. Hemingway won the Pulitzer Prize for Fiction in 1953 CE for *The Old Man and the Sea*, and it was also mentioned when he won the Nobel Prize for Literature in 1954 CE.

### **Analysis of Major Characters**

#### **Santiago :**

Santiago suffers terribly throughout *The Old Man and the Sea*. In the opening pages of the book, he has gone eighty-four days without catching a fish and has become the laughingstock of his small village. He then endures a long and grueling struggle with the marlin only to see his trophy catch destroyed by sharks. Yet, the destruction enables the old man to undergo a remarkable transformation, and he wrests triumph and renewed life from his seeming defeat. After all, Santiago is an old man whose physical existence is almost over, but the reader is assured that Santiago will persist through Manolin, who, like a disciple, awaits the old man's teachings and will make use of those lessons long after his teacher has died. Thus, Santiago manages, perhaps, the most miraculous feat of all: he finds a way to prolong his life after death.

Santiago's commitment to sailing out farther than any fisherman has before, to where the big fish promise to be, testifies to the depth of his pride. Yet, it also shows his determination to change his luck. For Santiago's pride also enables him to achieve his most true and complete self. Furthermore, it helps him earn the deeper respect of the village fishermen and secures

him the prized companionship of the boy—he knows that he will never have to endure such an epic struggle again.

Santiago's pride is what enables him to endure, and it is perhaps endurance that matters most in Hemingway's conception of the world—a world in which death and destruction, as part of the natural order of things, are unavoidable. Hemingway seems to believe that there are only

two options: defeat or endurance until destruction; Santiago clearly chooses the latter. For three days, he holds fast to the line that links him to the fish, even though it cuts deeply into his palms, causes a crippling cramp in his left hand, and ruins his back. This physical pain allows Santiago to forge a connection with the marlin that goes beyond the literal link of the line: his bodily aches attest to the fact that he is well matched, that the fish is a worthy opponent, and that he himself, because he is able to fight so hard, is a worthy fisherman. This connectedness to the world around him eventually elevates Santiago beyond what would otherwise be his defeat. The old man's physical suffering leads to a more significant spiritual triumph.

#### **Manolin :**

Manolin is present only in the beginning and at the end of *The Old Man and the Sea*, but his presence is important because Manolin's devotion to Santiago highlights Santiago's value as a person and as a fisherman. Manolin demonstrates his love for Santiago openly. He makes sure that the old man has food, blankets, and can rest without being bothered. Despite Hemingway's insistence that his characters were a real old man and a real boy, Manolin's purity and singleness of purpose elevate him to the level of a symbolic character. Manolin's actions are not tainted by the confusion, ambivalence, or willfulness that typify adolescence. Instead, he is a companion who feels nothing but love and devotion.

#### **Themes**

##### **The Honor in Struggle, Defeat & Death**

From the very first paragraph, Santiago is characterized as someone struggling against defeat. He has gone eighty-four days without catching a fish—he will soon pass his own record of eighty-seven days. Almost as a reminder of Santiago's struggle, the sail of his skiff resembles “the flag of permanent defeat.” But the old man refuses defeat at every turn: he resolves to sail out beyond the other fishermen to where the biggest fish promise to be. He lands the marlin, tying his record of eighty-seven days after a brutal three-day fight, and he continues to ward off sharks from stealing his prey, even though he knows the battle is useless.

Because Santiago is pitted against the creatures of the sea, some readers choose to view the tale as a chronicle of man's battle *against* the natural world, but the novella is, more accurately, the story of man's place *within* nature. Both Santiago and the marlin display qualities of pride, honor, and bravery, and both are subject to the same eternal law: they must kill or be killed. As Santiago reflects when he watches the weary warbler fly toward shore, where it will inevitably meet the hawk, the world is filled with predators, and no living thing can escape the inevitable struggle that will lead to its death. Santiago lives according to his own observation: “man is not made for defeat . . . [a] man can be destroyed but not defeated.” In Hemingway's portrait of the world, death is inevitable, but the best men (and animals) will nonetheless refuse to give in to its power. Accordingly, man and fish will struggle to the death, just as hungry sharks will lay waste to an old man's trophy catch.

## **Motifs**

*Motifs are recurring structures, contrasts, and literary devices that can help to develop and inform the text's major themes.*

### **Life from Death**

Death is the unavoidable force in the novella, the one fact that no living creature can escape. But death, Hemingway suggests, is never an end in itself: in death there is always the possibility of the most vigorous life. The reader notes that as Santiago slays the marlin, not only is the old man reinvigorated by the battle, but the fish also comes alive “with his death in him.” Life, the possibility of renewal, necessarily follows on the heels of death.

### **The Lions on the Beach**

Santiago dreams his pleasant dream of the lions at play on the beaches of Africa three times. The first time is the night before he departs on his three-day fishing expedition, the second occurs when he sleeps on the boat for a few hours in the middle of his struggle with the marlin, and the third takes place at the very end of the book. In fact, the sober promise of the triumph and regeneration with which the novella closes is supported by the final image of the lions. Because Santiago associates the lions with his youth, the dream suggests the circular nature of life. Additionally, because Santiago imagines the lions, fierce predators, playing, his dream suggests a harmony between the opposing forces—life and death, love and hate, destruction and regeneration—of nature.

### **Symbols :**

*Symbols are objects, characters, figures, and colors used to represent abstract ideas or concepts.*

### **The Marlin**

Magnificent and glorious, the marlin symbolizes the ideal opponent. In a world in which “everything kills everything else in some way,” Santiago feels genuinely lucky to find himself matched against a creature that brings out the best in him: his strength, courage, love, and respect.

### **The Sharks**

The shovel-nosed sharks are little more than moving appetites that thoughtlessly and gracelessly attack the marlin. As opponents of the old man, they stand in bold contrast to the marlin, which is worthy of Santiago's effort and strength. They symbolize and embody the destructive laws of the universe and attest to the fact that those laws can be transcended only when equals fight to the death. Because they are base predators, Santiago wins no glory from battling them.

## Vocabulary

1. Look at the words in the box. Which one means ...

<b>productive</b>	<b>hook</b>	<b>drag</b>	<b>surface</b>	<b>harpoon</b>	<b>club</b>	<b>reassure</b>	<b>assume</b>
منتج / كسيب	صنارة	يسحب	يظهر	رمح	هراوة	يطمنن	يقترض

1. A sharp, pointed weapon, like a knife on a long stick? .....
2. A heavy object used for hitting? .....
3. To pull something heavy behind you? .....
4. Someone who is successful or who earns you money? .....
5. To believe something without questioning it? .....
6. To say something positive to someone who is worried about something? .....
7. A curved object on which to hang something, for example a fish on a line? .....
8. To come to the top of the ocean or earth? .....

1. (harpoon) 2. (club) 3. (drag) 4. (productive) 5. (assume) 6. (reassume) 7. (hook) 8. (surface)

## Comprehension

2. Read the story again and answer the questions.

1. What evidence is there at the very beginning of the story that Santiago is a very optimistic and determined person?

ما هو الدليل الموجود في بداية القصة على أن سانتياغو شخص متفائل و مصمم؟

He goes to sea to try his luck every day even though he hasn't caught anything for 84 days.

يذهب إلى البحر كل يوم ليحرب حظله على الرغم من أنه لم يصطد منذ 84 يوما

2. When Santiago feels a bite on his line, he works out that "it must be a big fish, perhaps a marlin". What evidence is there that he is correct?

عندما يشعر سانتياغو بالطعم على الخيط يظن أنها لا بد و أن تكون سمكة كبيرة ربما سمكة مارلين ما الدليل على صدق ظنه؟

It drags the boat along for a long time, so it must be a big fish.

تسحب القارب أماما لوقت طويل فلا بد أن تكون سمكة كبيرة

3. Why does Santiago go to sleep that night with the line tied around himself?(paragraph4)

لماذا ينام سانتياغو تلك الليلة و الخيط مربوط حول جسمه؟

So that he doesn't lose it in the water and also so that he feels it when the fish pulls it.

كي لا يفقده في الماء و لكي يشعر به عندما تسحبه السمكة.

4. How does Manolin try encouraging Santiago not to give up fishing? What does this tell you about Manolin's character?(paragraph 9)

كيف يحاول مانولين تشجيع سانتياغو بان لا يترك مهنة الصيد؟ ماذا يخبرك هذا عن شخصية مانولين؟

Manolin tells Santiago that he beat the marlin and that he wants to fish with him again because he still has a lot to learn.

Manolin reassures Santiago that the great fish didn't beat him and that they will fish together again. He tells him that the old man still has much to teach him. Manolin seems to be a caring person; kind, thoughtful and loyal to Santiago.

مانولين يؤكد لسانتياغو بان السمكة الضخمة لم تهزمه و بأنهما سيصطادان معا ثانية. يقول له لدى العجوز الكثير ليعلمه إياه مانولين يبدو شخصا مهتما و ليظفا و مفكرا و مخلصا لسانتياغو.

**5. What is the reason for tourists` misunderstanding about the skeleton was?  
(paragraph 10)**

ما سبب عدم فهم السانحين عن الهيكل العظمي؟

The waiter couldn`t speak their language and was trying to explain about the sharks. However, the tourists only understood “shark” and assumed that the skeleton was the skeleton of a shark.

النادل لم يستطع التكلم بلغتهم و كان يحاول الإجابة عن القرش. مع ذلك فهم السانحين كلمة القرش و فهموا أن الهيكل لسمة قرش.

**Ideas :**

**3. Find a line in the story that represents the following ideas :**

جد السطر في القصة الذي يمثل الأفكار التالية :

1. memory : الذاكرة .....
2. determination : التصميم .....
3. strength : القوة .....
4. suffering and pain : المعاناة و الألم .....

**1. The numbers of the lines are taken from the students` book.**

1. lines 10–11 and 33–36
2. lines 1–2 and 13–15
3. lines 13–15 and 17–18
4. line 18 and line 21

**4. In this retelling of the story, strength is represented in many ways. Choose one example of strength and explain its importance.**

في إعادة سرد القصة القوة متمثلة بعدة أساليب. اختر مثالا على القوة ووضح أهميته.

The fish is an important representation of strength within the story. After it bites the line, Santiago is constantly in competition with it, needing to use ‘all his strength’ (line 14) to stay in his boat. It is also significant, since even though it is stronger than Santiago, he manages to catch it.

سمكة المارلين هي تمثيل مهم للقوة داخل القصة , بعد أن تناولت الطعم , كان العجوز سانتياغو في منافسة مستمرة معها , و الحاجة إلى استخدام كل قوته ( سطر 14 ) ليستطيع البقاء في قاربه . و هي أيضا مهمة حتى انه على الرغم من قوتها يمكن اصطيادها .

**Analysis :**

**5. Discuss these questions in pairs.**

**1. Why do you think that Manolin`s parents want him to stop fishing with Santiago?**

**Do you think they were justified?**

لماذا برأيك أراد والدا مانولين أن يمنعه من أن الصيد مع سانتياغو ؟ هل تعتقد بأنهما كانا محقين؟

They don`t think Santiago is productive enough. I think they are justified because if Manolin is not making any money, it means that his whole family will have nothing to eat.

لم يعتقدوا أن سانتياغو كسب. اعتقد أنهما محقان لأنه لو لم يكسب مانولين مالا فالعائلة كلها لن تجد ما تأكله.

**2. What is the importance of Santiago`s dreams of his youth, and of the lions in Africa?**

**How does this relate to the themes in the story?**

ما أهمية حلم سانتياغو عن شبابه, و عن اسود إفريقيا؟ كيف يتعلق هذا الحلم بمغزى القصة؟

Perhaps he is remembering his youth and wishing that he was young again so that he had the strength to deal easily with the problems at sea. Lions also signify strength. So, as well as the theme of memory, the dreams relate to the theme of strength.

ربما يتمنى انه شاب ثانية و يمتلك القوة للتعامل ببساطة مع مشاكل البحر. الأسود ترمز إلى القوة. كذلك أيضا فكرة الذاكرة لها صلة بفكرة القوة.

## Analysis

**1. The story of The Old Man and the Sea tries to teach us about the relationship between humans and nature. Find three quotations in the text to support this.**

قصة العجوز و البحر تحاول ان تعلمنا عن العلاقة بين الانسان و الطبيعة .جد ثلاثة جمل مقتبسة من النص لدعم هذا .

1. 'Instead, the fish swims away, dragging the old man and his boat along.' (line 7)
2. '... Santiago has to hold onto the line with all his strength to avoid being pulled into the sea.' (line 13)
3. 'Manolin reassures Santiago that the great fish didn't beat him and that they will fish together again.' (lines 21-22)

### C. TB page 149

**Why do you think Santiago risks his life for the marlin?**

لماذا برايك يخاطر سانتياغو بحياته من اجل سمكة المارلين ؟

I think that Santiago risks his life for the marlin because he has already put a lot of effort into catching it. It is possibly also something that could help him feel young again. He may also feel ashamed that he has failed to catch anything for the past eighty-four days and so is willing to risk his life to prove to the rest of the village that he is still a good fisherman.

اعتقد أن سانتياغو يخاطر بحياته من اجل سمكة المارلين لأنه وضع كل جهوده للامساك بها . هذا من الممكن شيئا قد يساعده ليشعر نفسه شابا مرة أخرى . و ربما أيضا يشعر بالخجل انه فشل في صيد أي شيء خلال الأربع و ثمانون يوما الماضية و لذلك هو مستعد للمخاطرة بحياته ليثبت لبقية القرية انه لا يزال صياد جيد .

- ملاحظات عامة يجب مراعاتها عند كتابة موضوع التعبير :

1. فهم ما هو مطلوب جيدا قبل البدء بالكتابة.
2. كتابة اسم / عنوان مناسب للموضوع.
3. اختيار الكلمات المناسبة للموضوع لتكوين أفكار صحيحة.
4. كتابة الكلمات بشكل صحيح إملايا.
5. التركيب القواعدي للجمل يجب أن يكون صحيحا.
6. استخدام علامات الترقيم المناسبة.
7. ترك فراغ بسيط بين الكلمات من أجل تسهيل عملية القراءة.
8. كتابة مسودة للموضوع و تدقيقها قبل اعتمادها لتجنب عملية الشطب و التكرار.
9. كتابة مقدمة و عرض و خاتمة لموضوع التعبير.
10. الاستفادة من الكلمات التي تحفظها في كتابة الموضوع.
11. تقسيم الموضوع إلى فقرات .

## UNIT ONE

### Writing : a discursive essay

You should follow these steps to write a good discursive essay .

#### Step 1 :

Introduce the situation in one or two sentences .

( Most people now use the internet on computers , smartphones and tablets to do a variety of tasks ) .

#### Step 2 :

Then write a thesis statement which outlines what you will write about .

( There are ( *numerous* ) and important advantages to shopping in this way ) .

#### Step 3 :

Explain in detail both sides of the discussion . Paragraph 2 must contain the advantages . Paragraph 3 should include one or two disadvantages .

#### Step 4 :

Conclusion : summarise briefly all aspects of the discussion .

#### Step 5 :

State your opinion ....

In my opinion / view .....

I believe / think .....

#### Stage 6 :

useful language :

However there are many disadvantages ..... It is true that ..... , but ..... In addition to this ..... moreover , .....

## **Writing ( 1 ) SB page ( 7 )**

### **Writing a paragraph**

When you write your paragraph , focus on these points :

1. Make sure that your paragraph has a topic sentence ( main idea ) , body and a concluding sentence .
2. Then edit your paragraph for spelling , missing words , punctuation and correct grammar .
3. Make sure that you use vocabulary that is relevant to the topic .
4. Finally , clarity is important . Check that your paragraph is easy to understand and to follow .

**Write a paragraph about how you or your family use modern technology. You should focus on using any new vocabulary to describe this.**

People can't live without modern technology these days . We depend on smart phones and the internet for communication . In addition to that , we use smart T.V sets at home . Our cars are equipped with modern navigation systems . Doctors need modern technology to perform difficult operations .Students depend on information from the internet for research . In short modern technology is around us . If we know how to use it correctly , then it will be very useful for our life .

## **Writing ( 2 ) SB page ( 9 )**

### **Writing sample paragraph**

**Write two paragraphs discussing the role of technology in communication. How important do you think technology is when we communicate? Pay attention to the linking words.**

#### **The role of Technology in communication**

Technology plays an important role in communication . It really makes communication faster and easier . Thanks to technology people can communicate with family and friends we don't see every day Therefore technology has become an essential part of our daily life .

Despite the undeniable advantages of technology , it has had some negative effects on our society . For example social media is time wasting . The faster we communicate the more likely it is that there will be misunderstandings . Besides fast and convenient communication makes it easier to offend or upset people since we don't put as much thought into what we write due to the speed of the communication .

### **Writing ( 3) SB page 11**

**Write a three-paragraph essay of 200 words discussing the advantages and disadvantages of on line shopping. Then share your work with the class.**

#### **The advantages and disadvantages of online shopping**

Most people now use the Internet on computers, smartphones and tablets to do a variety of tasks. For many people, these tasks include online shopping. From shopping for groceries to all kinds of clothes shopping, consumers are finding this the easiest way to get what they need, literally at the touch of a button. However, there are numerous and important disadvantages to shopping in this way.

Although using the Internet to shop is usually fairly easy, and there is often greater variety available, it is always a risk because you cannot try on or see in detail the item you wish to buy. In fact, the immediate 'convenience' of shopping in this way can end up being an inconvenience if the item is faulty or does not fit, or is just not what the customer wanted. It is true that the prices are better when you shop online, but, while it might be cheaper, there is a distinct disadvantage because you have to wait for the delivery of the purchases. Some people might prefer not to have any personal contact while shopping online, but it can save time in the end since there are always assistants to help with queries you might have during the transaction. In addition to this, there is the issue of Internet payment security; however, recently this has improved a lot.

The Internet has indeed given us a wider choice as consumers, as well as made some aspects of shopping more pleasant and convenient. However, it is nearly impossible, in my opinion, to forget the disadvantages we experience from time to time, since these can and do influence the way in which we choose to shop.

### **Writing .WB, page (9)**

**What are the advantages and disadvantages of the 'Internet of Things'? Read the lists and add your own ideas.**

**Take care of these expressions.**

**In this way / Therefore / Consequently / As a result / As consequence → ( Consequence , result )**

**Opposition → However , Despite , Whereas , Although On the one hand , On the other hand**

**( Despite + noun phrase )**

**( Although + verb phrase )**

**Despite the bad weather , we made our journey .**

**Although the weather was bad , we made our journey .**

### **Writing .WB, page (9)**

Internet things have a lot of advantages and a few disadvantages . When we use internet things at home lights will go off automatically .Consequently , we will save energy .

On the one hand , when we use internet things , life would be easier . On the other hand , we would have less privacy . In addition to that , driverless cars would make travelling simple .

However , if driverless cars went wrong , they could be dangerous and would cause disasters . In short , although the internet of things sounds exciting , we should be careful .

## UNIT TWO

When you write a report , you should follow these steps :

**Stage 1 :**

Write a title and keep it concise and informative ( participation in the arts in London , England )

**Stage 2 :**

Explain what information your report will include . Two or three sentences are enough .

The aim of the report is to .....

The report examines .....

In this report , ( .. ) will be examined .

**Stage 3 :**

Use subheading for the paragraphs . Cite percentages and fractions according to the research .

( 40 per cent of people ..... )

( Half of the people interviewed ..... )

- Don't write your opinion at all .

**Stage 4 :**

Recommendations / conclusions

Sum up your findings and suggest next steps .

( It is important to focus on ..... )

Use bullet to illustrate separate points .

- giving money ....

- working in part time jobs ....

Remember to use formal language and don't use abbreviations .

( F ) I'm = ( T ) I am

**Stage 5 :**

Check spelling , grammar and punctuation

**Writing ( 1 ) SB page 15**

**Read the two sample reports on page 72 of the Activity Book. Which do you think gives a clearer picture of participation in the arts in London, England? Why? Consider the following:**

- structure • register • vocabulary • content

### Participation in the arts in London, England

**Introduction**

The aim of this report is to provide information concerning participation in the arts in London, England. It will include factors which discourage people from taking part, and suggest ways to increase participation.

**Current situation**

I interviewed people between the ages of 15 and 50 who live in London. Just under half of the people who were interviewed said they took part in music, drama or art. The most popular activity was taking music lessons, followed by going to art galleries and concerts. Drama and dance classes were popular with people in their thirties, because classes are social occasions.

### **Factors preventing fuller participation**

About 40 per cent of people asked said that they did not enjoy the arts, giving reasons such as boredom for this. The other 60 per cent said that most arts-related activities were too expensive, such as theatre visits or music lessons. Some people said that finding a good teacher was difficult.

### **Recommendations**

It is important to focus on those who currently do not participate in the arts at all by

- arranging a subsidised program for those who want to study music or dance but do not have enough money.
- publicising and presenting cheaper theatre performances
- further research into reasons why people do not enjoy the arts.

A study was done to find out about the number of people who participate in the arts in London. We wanted to find out what kind of arts activities people preferred, whether they liked watching drama or dance, going to galleries, or participating actively in the arts scene. We also wanted to suggest how to improve participation in the arts.

About forty per cent of the people that we asked said that they took part in arts activities. This included music and dance lessons, as well as trips to art galleries and theatres. The remaining sixty per cent of people said that they could not afford to do these things, or that they did not find them interesting.

In conclusion, it might be a good idea to get funding to make some arts activities a lot cheaper to do. This would increase participation from those who already take part, as well as make the activities more attractive for the people who do not participate at the moment.

**Now write a paragraph of 60 words summarising your preferred report.**

My preferred report is the first one . The first report has information concerning taking part in the arts in London . It gives more information about the factors which prevent people from participating and provides some suggestions to raise participation . The writer interviewer people aged between 15 and 50 who are London livers . He discovered some interesting finding .Finally , he gives some suggestions to increase taking part in the arts .

### **Writing ( 2 ) SB page 17**

**Consider the plan of a report about free-time activities that are available in your area on page 73 of the Activity Book. In groups of five, choose a paragraph each and expand it. Present your paragraph to the group, and join the five paragraphs. Make any necessary adaptations.**

Free-time activities available in [your town]

#### **Introduction**

This report examines the free-time activities that [your town] has to offer. [include details of the town such as population, size, geographical location; list main types of entertainment that can be found, such as sport, music and the arts, public services, shopping]

### **Subheading 1 [e.g. Sport]**

[detail the sports facilities and available sports, and any terrain that might encourage e.g. cycling or running; describe how popular each sport is, and note the type of people who practise it]

### **Subheading 2 [e.g. Music and the arts]**

[detail any theatres or concert halls, say what is currently showing what has shown in the past; include any youth orchestras and include the level of achievement; include cinemas and galleries if possible]

### **Subheading 3 [e.g. Public services]**

[include any libraries, museums, parks or other public services]

### **Conclusion**

[sum up the information; comment on whether there is much or little to do in [your town]; include a recommendation for what could be improved (and how) if applicable]

## **Free-time activities in my town**

### **Introduction**

This report examines the free time activities that my town has to offer . My town has a population of about 100,00 people , so it is a big town . It is located 20 kilo meters east of the Capital Amman . My town provides a number of types of entertainment such as sport , public service and shopping .

### **Sport**

I interviewed young people in my town . I found out that 90 per cent of them practise football as free time activity . 5 per cent practise volley ball and basket ball . The rest practise different sports such as running , cycling and swimming .

### **Shopping**

About 50 per cent of adults asked said that they enjoyed shopping in my town as it has some big shopping centers . The other 50 per cent said they didn't enjoy shopping because these shopping centers are crowded and they sell expensive products .

### **Public Service**

Only 3 per cent of the people I interviewed said they visited the public library in my town . The majority complained that their town doesn't have museums , parts or recreation places .

### **Conclusion**

My town is poor in free-time activities . Therefore I suggest solving this problem by Building parks and 200s for all people to go to for their free time activities . Spreading information about the public library because some people don't know any thing about it .

### **Writing ( 3 ) SB page 19**

**Write a report about health facilities in your area. Remember to include a title, and supply factual information. Write about 200 words.**

### **Health Facilities in my area**

The aim of this report is to shed the light on health facilities in my area .It is a crowded place but Thanks to God that we have well-equipped and highly developed health facilities .

### **Health centers**

There are two modern governmental health centers in my area . Although these centers are crowded , they provide good health services to many people . There are other private health centers that provide health services to the people who don't have health insurance ( security ).

## **Hospitals**

My area has two big hospitals : the military hospital and another private hospital . These two hospitals have well-trained staff : doctors and nurses . Unfortunately , more than 50 per cent of people complain about crowdedness in these hospitals .

## **Recommendations**

It appears that crowdedness is the major problem concerning health facilities in my area. Therefore , I suggest the following steps to ease or get rid of crowdedness .

Building a new hospital that can serve 200 beds .

Providing the hospitals and the health centers with more doctors .

## **Writing WB page 14**

**Read the article on page 13 again, then answer the questions in note form.**

### **Report on obesity**

#### **Jordan and obesity**

In Jordan a lot of people suffer from the problem of obesity . Because people are fond of fast food and use cars for moving from one place to another , they have become fatter and fatter . I have put on some weight recently because I spend too much time in front of the T.V .

My dad is overweight and so is my mother .

#### **Useful tips**

I and my family have taken some serious steps to get rid of obesity .First , we have joined a sport center where experts help us to exercise three-days a week . Besides we have stopped eating fast food and junk food .Instead , we eat salad , fish and beef . In addition , we now walk to the shops to buy our needs . We don't use the car any more .

## **UNIT THREE**

### **Descriptive essay**

Make sure that you follow these points .

#### **Stage 1 :**

*Write an introduction : Make a general statement ( There is no doubt that ..... ) , then state your opinion ( To me , it seems that ..... ) ( I believe , think..... )*

#### **Stage 2 :**

*Write the body ( 2 \_ 3 paragraph ) .*

*Describe some aspects of the essay topic , dividing the material between paragraphs , depending on your focus .*

#### **Stage 3 :**

*Write a conclusion : summarise your descriptions and relate them back to the introductions .*

#### **Stage 4 :**

*Check spelling , grammar and punctuation .*

### **Writing ( 1 ) SB page 21 sample essay**

Think of three ways in which people will be living in the future. Write about 80 words.

Consider three of the following: -at home -in a hospital -at school -at work

Nobody knows exactly what may happen in the future . But I believe that life in the future will be different from life today . I think people will probably live in smart homes which can switch on or off lights and other devices automatically . I expect that schools will use smart boards and computers might replace teacher .libraries will disappear too . All exams will be online . As for work , I believe that robots will replace people to run factories and workshop . people may work at their home to do a great many jobs . All in all life in the future will change greatly from the life we have today .

## Writing ( 2) SB page 23

### Worldwide transport in the future

Read the sample descriptive essay on page 74 of the Activity Book. First, label the parts of the essay, using the bullet points under it. Then, highlight or underline any of the following rhetorical devices that you find:

- sensory descriptions • onomatopoeia
- simile • personification

Finally, write an extra paragraph of about 50 words.

### Worldwide transport in the future

It is of course difficult to say exactly what transportation will look like in the future, because of the infrastructural changes that are happening constantly at the moment. To me, it seems that transport may well have changed a lot in one hundred years' time.

Perhaps there will be no more private transport by 2115 CE. It is possible that public transport will have improved so much that no one will need their own cars. We might all be zooming around in ecologically-sound electric buses and trams that will take us to our destinations smoothly!

In order to get to other countries, we will be taking airships, which will be like aeroplanes but with more facilities available. It will be possible to travel to the other side of the world in much less time, because these airships will race around at a far greater velocity.

Finally, modes of transport are always changing, depending on many different factors, but one thing is certain; we will still be travelling the whole world! We might even be able to experience weightlessness by travelling to space!

### Writing skills: Using rhetorical devices

**Sensory descriptions** : descriptions that appeals to the five senses of touch ,smell, sight, taste , hearing.

**Simile**: a way of comparing two things using like or as.....as

*Some robots will look and sound very like humans, because technology will have advanced a great deal.*

*Treatment and medicines will taste as delicious as real food.*

**Metaphor**: a word or phrase for one thing that is used to refer to another thing in order to show or suggest that way they are similar.

*The world will be at your fingertips.*

**Onomatopoeia**:

*Everywhere we go we will hear the constant buzz and hum of technology.*

**Personification**: giving humans characteristics to an object

*The sun shone warm and welcoming*

*Our computers and mobile phones will take care of us, by telling us when to wake up, eat and sleep.*

### Writing ( 3) SB page 25

**Describe Jordan in the next century. What do you think it will look like? What will people be doing? What will life be like? Use the rhetorical devices in exercise 10, page 23 and write 200 words.**

In the next century , Jordan will witness considerable huge changes that might make it different from Jordan today . The population will probably reach 50 million people . So we might see skyscrapers that are higher than the clouds . We will hear the constant buzz and hum of technology in the streets of Amman and all other towns . By next century , Jordan will have become the most developed country in the region . Jordan will probably become like Japan in the future . The streets will have become wider and busier because the population will be so huge .....

### Writing WB page 18

**Write an essay predicting medical advances by the year 2100 CE. Write about 100 words.**

#### Medical advances by the year 2100 CE

Nobody knows exactly what will happen by the year 2100 CE concerning medical advances . In this essay I will try to make some predictions about medicine and medical advances the future .

By the year 2100 CE , doctors will have found a cure for many diseases such as colds , flu and cancer . In addition to that scientists will have invented a device that enables blind people to see and deaf people to hear . By 2100 CE the average life expectancy will extend to 120 . Besides diseases will be limited to two or three .

I also predict that scientists will invent a device capable of predicting contagious diseases . Therefore they will be able to prevent epidemics from killing so many people like today .

## UNIT FOUR

When you write a summary , follow these stages .

### Stage 1 :

*Draw a table or diagram about what you read → if the summary is about people use this table .*

Name	
Date	
Location	
Occupation and interests	
Achievements	
Legacy	

**Stage 2 :**

*Use the prompts to write information in your own words .*

**Stage 3 :**

*Start your summary using some of these useful expressions*

*This article discusses .....*

*The author states that .....*

*Keep using the following language in your summary .*

*The author goes on to say that .....*

*Some people argue that .....*

*others insist that .....*

*Whatever the opinion , it is clear that .*

**Writing ( 1) SB page 29**

Research and write notes. Then, write a summary paragraph of 80 words about someone from the past who made an important achievement. Write what it is that made them famous.

**Marie Curie**

Marie curie was born on 7 November 1867 in Poland . She was a pioneer in the field of radioactivity . Her parents were teachers . Her sister was a scientist , and her husband was also a scientist and a Nobel Prize winner . Marie Curie was famous because she was the first person to win two Nobel Prizes in two different sciences , chemistry and physics . Curie studied in France where she later taught and did research . She discovered Uranium , a radioactive material . Curie's death from cancer in 1934 was probably due to her work with radiation .

**Writing( 2) SB page 31****A Harmful Invention**

**Research and write notes . Then , write two paragraphs about an invention , discovery or development .**

Unfortunately , not all inventions have been helpful . Some have been very harmful . According to the World Health Organization cigarette smoking causes almost 5.5 million deaths a year around the world . Cigarette kill almost half the people who use them . More people die from smoking cigarettes than die in wars . So if we think that all inventions are useful and helpful then we are wrong . Some inventions like smoking cigarettes have disastrous effects on people .

**Writing ( 3) SB page 33****The Masdar City megaproject**

**Write a summary of the article about Masdar City on page 32. Remember to be concise and write between 100 and 150 words.**

The article discusses Masdar City, which is an example of a 'megaproject'.

A megaproject is a large-scale investment project designed to stimulate the economy and benefit the population. The author states that this project is currently being undertaken in Abu Dhabi and has attracted a lot of both positive and negative attention.

The author goes on to say that, whilst it has been praised for its environmentally-friendly status, some people argue that we should prioritise sustainability in already existing cities, rather than creating new ones.

Whatever the opinion, it is clear that the project is a landmark of urban planning and a precursor of megaprojects to come.

## Guided Writing

### WB page 23

Read the text on page 22 again. Underline the parts that give you basic information about Ibn Bassal and write them below.

Name	Ibn Bassal
Date	11 <sup>th</sup> century CE
Location	Al-Andalus , Spain
Occupation and interests	A writer , a scientist , an engineer , great passion : botany and agriculture
Achievements	A Book of Agriculture
legacy	Irrigation systems , his book

Ibn Bassal was a famous Muslim scientist who lived in Al-Andalus , Spain in the 11<sup>th</sup> century CE . He was a practical man and he worked with the king of Toledo, Al-Ma'mun . Ibn Bassal was a great writer , a famous scientist and an engineer too . He wrote a famous book called A Book of Agriculture . The book contained 16 chapters about trees , fruit , herbs and vegetables . He also designed an irrigation system . Finally , Ibn Bassal left a great legacy to the world . His book and the irrigation systems had great influence on farmers and farming around the world .

## UNIT FIVE

Essay writing = expressing your opinions

### Stage 1 :

Decide what your options are on this subject .

### Stage 2 :

Plan your essay in four paragraphs .

paragraph 1 : Background to the topic

( In this essay I intend to look at / consider / discuss ..... )

paragraph 2 : Arguments for ( The main point / argument for ..... )

paragraph 3 : Arguments against ( The main point / argument against ..... )

paragraph 4 : Your opinion

In my opinion / view .....

I believe / I think .....

**Stage 3 :**

Check spelling , grammar and punctuation .

**Writing ( 1) SB page 35**

**Write two paragraphs about an arts or cultural event that you have been to or have read about. The first paragraph should say what was good about it, and the second should contain any criticisms that you may have.**

Last year I visited India with some of my friends . The next day , we were invited to a festival called “ Holi “ “ Holi “ is a spring festival of colours . Holi celebrations start with a bonfire on the night before Holi where people gather , sing and dance . The next morning is a free-all carnival of colours , where all participants play , chase and colour each other . That was great and we really enjoyed the experience .

Unfortunately , the Holi festival was crowded with so many people . It was very difficult to distinguish your friends from other people as everyone was covered with colours . In addition to that restaurants only served India meals which were hot and expensive .

**Writing ( 2) SB page 37**

**Read the skeleton argumentative essay on page 75 of the Activity Book. Answer the following questions:**

- **What does the writer do in each paragraph?**
- **Look at the second and third paragraphs. Which has the stronger argument? Why do you think the author arranged it in this way?**
- **Read them again. Comment on the tone. How does this help the writer to make his or her point?**

**Use the notes to complete the middle paragraphs.**

**‘Craftspeople are skilled workers and should be paid better salaries.’**

It is universally understood that everyone deserves a salary in proportion with the difficulty, danger and ultimate importance of the work that they do. For this reason, it must be argued that craftspeople deserve larger salaries.

**Body paragraph plan 1:**

- Crafts are important to continue awareness of history and traditions (opposing view – is this really important anymore?)
- Crafts are sold at vast expense; people who make these items should see most of the profits (opposing view – it is no different from any other trade; those who sell take the larger profit)

**Body paragraph plan 2:**

- Unskilled staff such as waiters are paid low wages because it is a job with a high staff turnover and little skill involved; craftspeople dedicate their lives to this craft and still receive little money for their work (opposing view – the world is changing; there is no place for craftspeople any more)

- The dangerous work that goes into craftsmanship should be well rewarded; it is not comparable to receiving the occasional burn as a waiter or waitress (opposing view – it would drive up the costs of the crafts further)

For the reasons stated above, it can be clearly seen that craftspeople are owed a livable salary that reflects the risk they put themselves in daily, as well as their contribution to keeping Jordanian traditions alive.

**‘Craftspeople are skilled workers and should be paid better salaries.’**

The job done by craftspeople only helps the economy if the people who publicise and sell their work are successful. Traditional crafts are usually not well publicised and are sold in very small amounts. This means that it would be impossible to provide a full and regular salary to a craftspeople.

These days, it is common for people to choose mass-produced goods for the simple reason that they cost less and can be relied upon. What is more, it is evident that the world is changing, and that the place that craftspeople hold in society is becoming less affordable. For this reason they should not be paid an increased wage.

It could be argued that craftspeople endure difficult and tiring days and receive little money in recognition of this. However, they learn their trade as apprentices and do not have to suspend their income or pay a large amount of money for four years to get a university degree.

Thus it can be seen that craftspeople should not be paid increased salaries, because of the restructured economic system and the consequent shift in the importance of the crafts they produce.

**Writing ( 3) SB page 39**

**‘Traditional crafts have no place in today’s society.’ Do you agree with this statement? Justify your answer.**

Many people believe that traditional crafts have no place in today’s society . Personally I think traditional crafts are important and will remain of high value for so many reasons . First , traditional crafts are essential to educate young people about life in the past . They know how their ancestors lived .Second , traditional crafts can provide jobs for craftsmen . Basket makers , weavers and other craftsmen can make money from such crafts . Third , traditional crafts are genuine and of high quality compared to ready-made items . It could be argued that traditional crafts are disappearing and they have no value in our society . The people who claim this say that ready-made items are cheaper and more durable .However , cheap things don’t last long . In conclusion , I believe that traditional crafts are highly important and have a vital place in our society for the reasons I mentioned above .

**Writing WB page 27**

**You are going to write an argumentative essay about museums and modern culture. Some people think that museums and modern culture are a waste of time . Others say that museums and modern culture are important because they aim at educating people . This essay will discuss the two opinions .**

Those who think that museums and modern culture are a waste of time claim that it is better to build schools and health centres for poor people than all museums in the world . On the other hand those who are in favour of museums say that museums teach us about history , traditions , scientific inventions and some animal or plant species . The people who are against museums say that entrance fees are very expensive . However people who are for museums insist that fees are paid to supply the museums with equipment , electricity and other needs . For the reasons mentioned above , museums and modern culture are necessary to educate to entertain people .

# IRREGULAR VERBS

الأفعال غير المنتظمة

BASE FORM	PAST SIMPLE	PAST PARTICIPLE
awake	awoke	awoken
be	was, were	been
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
bend	bent	bent
bet	bet	bet
bid	bid	bid
bite	bit	bitten
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
broadcast	broadcast	broadcast
build	built	built
burn	burned/burnt	burned/burnt
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
dig	dug	dug
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
dream	dreamed/dreamt	dreamed/dreamt
drive	drove	driven
drink	drank	drunk
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
forgive	forgave	forgiven
freeze	froze	frozen
get	got	got (sometimes gotten)
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grow	grew	grown
hang	hung	hung
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hide	hid	hidden
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt

<b>BASE FORM</b>	<b>PAST SIMPLE</b>	<b>PAST PARTICIPLE</b>
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known
lay	laid	laid
lead	led	led
learn	learned/learnt	learned/learnt
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent
let	let	let
lie	lay	lain
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read	read	read
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
rise	rose	risen
run	ran	run
make	made	made
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
seek	sought	sought
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
show	showed	showed/shown
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spend	spent	spent
stand	stood	stood
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tear	tore	torn
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written